

C H I N E S E

FLAMRIC

MILITARY DIALOGUES

Part 2

Reprinted for FLAMRIC in

August 1981

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

PREFACE

Each of these units consists of a dialogue, vocabulary, story comprehension, English test questions for the story comprehension, answers to English test questions, conversational response, translations, interpretation practice and role playing.

The dialogue, vocabulary, story comprehension, English test questions and answers are presented for self study. The conversational response, translations, interpretation practice and role playing are better presented by an instructor but can be used for self study.

It is recommended that you read the dialogue aloud before studying the vocabulary to give you practice in figuring out new characters from context. After studying the dialogue, vocabulary and reading the story comprehension, which contains most of the new vocabulary, answer the English test questions for the story comprehension in English and check your answers with the answers to the English questions.

CONTENTS

Unit 1	1
Unit 2	38
Unit 3	78
Unit 4	117
Unit 5	153
Unit 6	191
Unit 7	230
Vocabulary	269

The material contained in this volume was developed by the DLIFLC Chinese Course Development team.

UNIT 1

DIALOGUE

1. A: 解放军的装备怎么样?

B: 不错, 一九四九年解放以前, 有的装备是美国制造的、有的是日本制造的、有的是国民党制造的。解放以后, 大部份是苏联和其他几个社会主义国家制造的。

2. A: 现在呢?

B: 从一九六〇年起, 差不多都是我们自己制造的了。

3. A: 中国的科技落后, 怎么会制造新武器、新装备呢?

B: 那时候, 党中央的政策是要我们抓研究、抓发展, 把科技跟国防搞上去。所以, 大家落实了党的政策, 作出了很大的贡献。

4. A: 赶得上先进国家的水平吗?

B: 如果没有社会帝国主义和四人帮的干扰、破坏, 早就赶上了。现在在这两方面, 我们跟先进国家比, 还有很大的差距。

5. A: 实现了四个现代化以后, 就赶得上了吧?

B: 那是将来的事。现在我们还值得买外国的装备武器, 象空对空导弹、战斗机、发动机, 等等。

6. A: 你们不是早就会制造这些东西了吗?

B: 问题不是会不会制造, 而是制造了以后, 性能好不好。比如说, 我们的发动机的性能就比不上外国的。

1. A: Jiěfàngjūnde zhuāngbèi zěnmeyàng?
How's the equipment of the Liberation Army?
- B: Búcuò. Yíjiǔsìjiǔnián jiěfàng yǐqián, yǒude zhuāngbèi shì Měiguó zhìàode, yǒude shì Riběn zhìàode, yǒude shì Guómíndǎng zhìào de. Jiěfàng yǐhòu, dàbùfen shì Sūlián hé qítā jǐge shèhuìzhǔyì guójiā zhìàode.
Not bad. Before liberation in 1949, some of the equipment was American-made, some was Japanese-made, and some was made by the Kuomintang. After liberation, the majority was made by Russia and several other socialist countries.
2. A: Xiànzài ne?
How about now?
- B: Cóng Yíjiǔliùlíngnián qǐ, chābùduō dōu shì wǒmen zìjǐ zhìàode le.
From 1960 on, almost all the equipment was made by us (ourselves).
3. A: Zhōngguóde kējì luòhòu, zěnmehuì zhìào xīn wǔqì, xīn zhuāngbèi ne?
China's science and technology are backward, how can she manufacture new weapons and new equipment?
- B: Nèishíhou, Dǎngzhōngyāngde zhèngcè shì yào wǒmen zhuā yánjiū, zhuā fāzhǎn, bǎ kējì gēn guófáng gāoshàngqù. Suóyì, dàjiā luòshíle dǎngde zhèngcè, zuòchūle hěn dàde gòngxiàn.
At that time, the policy of the Party's Central Committee wanted us to stress research and development, and to improve science and technology and the national defense. Therefore, everyone carried out the Party's policy, and made (very) great contributions.
4. A: Gǎndeshàng xiànjīn guójiāde shuǐpíng ma?
Was she able to catch up to the level of the advanced nations?
- B: Rúguǒ méiyǒu shèhuìdìguózhǔyì hé Sīrénbāng de gānrǎo, pòhuài, zǎo jiù gǎnshàng le. Xiànzài, zài zhèi liǎng fāngmian, wǒmen gēn xiànjīn guójiā bǐ, hái yǒu hěn dàde chājù.
We would have caught up long ago if there wasn't obstruction and destruction by the social-imperialists and the Gang of Four. Now, there's still a big gap in comparing us and the advanced nations in these two respects.

5. A: Shíxiànle sìge xiàndàihuà
yǐhòu, jiù gǎndeshàng le
ba?

I suppose you'll be able to catch
up after you've carried out the
four modernizations?

B: Nà shì jiānglái de shì. Xiànzài
wǒmen hái dēi mǎi wàiguó de
zhuāngbèi wǔqì; xiàng kōng-
duì-kōng dǎodàn, zhàndòujī,
fādòngjī, dēngděng.

That's a matter of the future.
Now we must still buy foreign
equipment and weapons; such as
air-to-air missiles, fighter
planes, engines, etc.

6. A: Nǐmen búshì zǎo jiù huì zhìzào
zhèxiē dōngxì le ma?

Didn't you know how to manufacture
these things long ago?

B: Wèntí búshì huì búhuì zhìzào,
érshì zhìzào le yǐhòu, xìng-
néng hǎo bùhǎo. Bǐrú shuō,
wǒmen de fādòngjī de xìngnéng
jiù bǐbùshàng wàiguó de.

The question isn't whether or not
we know how to make them, but
rather whether or not performance
is any good after manufacture.
For instance, the performance of
our engines can't compare with
foreign-made ones.

VOCABULARY

比不上	bǐbushàng	can't compare with
比得上	bǐdeshàng	can compare with
不是...而是	búshì...éershì	it's not...but rather
差距	chājù	gap (in comparing quality and quantity of something)
从...起	cóng...qǐ	from...on
党中央	Dǎngzhōngyāng	The Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party
发动机	fādòngjī	engine
干扰	gānrǎo	to obstruct, to interfere, to disturb; obstruction, interference, disturbance
赶上	gǎnshàng	to catch up with
搞上去	gǎoshàngqù	to improve
贡献	gòngxiàn	contribution (not in the sense of donation)
国防	guófáng	national defense
国民党	Guómíndǎng	Kuomintang (the Nationalist Party)
科技	kējì	science and technology (abbreviation of kēxué "science" and jìshù "technique, skill, technology.")
空对空导弹	kōngduìkōng dǎodàn	air-to-air missile
落后	luòhòu	to fall/lag behind, to be backward
破坏	pòhuài	to destroy, destruction
社会帝国主义	shèhuìdìguózhǔyì	social-imperialism
社会主义	shèhuìzhǔyì	socialism
实现	shíxiàn	to realize, to accomplish, to bring about

WAE, Unit 1

现代化	xiàndàihuà	to modernize; modernization
性能	xìngnéng	properties and performance (of anything mechanical)
早就	zǎo jiù	long ago
战斗机	zhàndòuji	fighter plane (C: jià)
作出贡献	zuòchū gòngxiàn	to make a contribution

STORY COMPREHENSION

去年十一月，党中央派我到外国去访问。我去的那两个国家离中国不远。名字我可不能说，因为党中央跟我说，我访问了回来以后，可以把参观的情况告诉解放军的干部，但是不许说那两个国家的名字。我怎么办呢，我想就管第一个国家叫甲国，第二个国家叫乙国。我访问甲国跟乙国的目的是要看看他们研究发展武器的情况，并且也看看他们训练军队的情况。

甲国跟乙国虽然都是社会主义的国家，可是甲国的政府和人民对社会主义的积极性比不上乙国。甲国的科技水平也没有乙国的那么高。我先把甲国的情况报告一下。我是十一月三号到的甲国，在那儿访问了二十多天，先看军队的训练再看他们武器

Qùnián Shíyīyuè, Dǎngzhōngyāng pài wǒ dào wàiguó qù fǎngwèn. Wǒ qùde nà liǎngge guójiā lí Zhōngguó bùyuǎn. Míngzi wǒ kě bùnéng shuō, yīnwei Dǎngzhōngyāng gēn wǒ shuō, wǒ fǎngwènle huílái yǐhòu, kěyǐ bǎ cānguān de qíngkuàng gàosu Jiěfàngjūn de gānbù, dànshi bùxǔ shuō nà liǎngge guójiāde míngzi. Wǒ zěnmebàn ne, wǒ xiǎng jiù guǎn dìyīge guójiā jiào Jiǎguó, dìèrge guójiā jiào Yǐguó. Wǒ fǎngwèn Jiǎguó gēn Yǐguó de mùdì shì yào kànkān tāmen yánjiū fāzhǎn wǔqì de qíngkuàng, bìngqiě yě kànkān tāmen xùnlìàn jūnduì de qíngkuàng.

Jiǎguó gēn Yǐguó suǐrán dōu shì Shèhuìzhǔyì de guójiā, kěshi Jiǎguó de zhèngfǔ hé rénmín duì Shèhuìzhǔyì de jījíxìng bǐbùshàng Yǐguó. Jiǎguó de kējì shuǐpíng yě méiyǒu Yǐguóde nàme gāo. Wǒ xiān bǎ Jiǎguóde qíngkuàng bàogào yíxià. Wǒ shì Shíyīyuè sānhào dào de Jiǎguó, zài nàr fǎngwènle èrshíduōtiān, xiān kàn jūnduìde

的情况。甲国陆军的训练赶不上咱们，海军的训练跟咱们的差不多，空军的训练比咱们好多了。他们陆军训练不抓射击、不抓战术，指战员用很多时间讨论马列主义的著作。我认为他们浪费的时间太多了。我问过一个干部，为什么他们不着重射击。他说那是他们政府的政策，他也不知道是什么原因。他们海军训练跟咱们的差不多，不过在配合陆军登陆这一方面需要改良。我已经跟负责的指挥员说，我们的党中央将来可以派一些海军干部去帮助他们训练海军战士。他们空军训练的质量非常好。受飞行训练的学员飞行了二百五十小时才可以毕业，我看他们的水平比先进国家的水平还要高。在轰炸训练这方面他们也搞得很好，我觉得咱们负责轰炸训练的同志应该向他们学习一下。

xùnliàn zài kàn tāmen wǔqì de qíngkuàng. Jiǎguó lùjūnde xùnliàn gǎnbushàng zánmen, hǎijūn de xùnliàn gēn zánmende chābùduō, kōngjūn de xùnliàn bǐ zánmen hǎoduōle. Tāmen lùjūn xùnliàn bùzhuā shèjī, bùzhuā zhànshù, zhǐzhànyuán yòng hěnduō shíjiān tāolùn Mǎlièzhǔyì de zhùzuò. Wǒ rènwéi tāmen làngfèi de shíjiān tài duōle. Wǒ wènguó yíge gānbù, wèishénme tāmen bùzhuózhòng shèjī. Tā shuō nà shì tāmen zhèngfǔde zhèngcè, tā yě bùzhīdao shì shénme yuányīn. Tāmen hǎijūn xùnliàn gēn zánmende chābùduō, búguò zài pèihé lùjūn dēnglù zhè yìfāngmian xūyào gǎiliáng. Wǒ yǐjīng gēn fùzéde zhǐhuīyuán shuō, wǒmende Dǎngzhōngyāng jiānglái kěyǐ pài yìxiē hǎijūn gānbù qù bāngzhù tāmen xùnliàn hǎijūn zhànshì. Tāmen kōngjūn xùnliàn de zhìliàng fēicháng hǎo. Shòu fēixíng xùnliàn de xuéyuán fēixíngle èrbǎiwǔshíxiǎoshí cái kěyǐ bìyè, wǒ kàn tāmende shuǐpíng bǐ xiānjìn guójiāde shuǐpíng hái yào gāo. Zài hōngzhà xùnliàn zhè fāngmian tāmen yě gǎode hěn hǎo, wǒ juéde

甲国军队的武器装备怎么样呢？我看他们得把武器的研究发展搞上去。他们的社会主义政府是一九四六年成立的，从前的政府是个反动派的政府，自己不会制造武器，经常地买日本跟英国的装备。一九四六年新政府成立以后，有一个新政策，就是百分之八十的武器装备得自己制造；百分之二十的武器装备可以向外国买。可是这个政策不能落实，因为科技太落后了。从一九四六年起到现在，已经好几十年了，他们连步枪、手枪都不能生产。前年，他们想派人到中国来学习，可是被社会帝国主义的国家干扰；甲国政府有一点儿害怕，就不敢派人来了。上次我去访问的时候我跟他们政府的人说，如果要把科技跟国防搞上去，就

zánmen fùzé hōngzhà xùnliàn de tóngzhì
yīnggāi xiàng tāmen xuéxí yíxià.

Jiǎguó jūnduì de wǔqì zhuāngbèi
zěnmeyàng ne? Wǒ kàn tāmen děi bǎ
wǔqì de yánjiū fāzhǎn gāoshàngqu.
Tāmende shèhuìzhǔyì zhèngfǔ shì
Yījiūsìliùnián chénglìde, cóngqián
de zhèngfǔ shì ge fǎndòngpài de zhèngfǔ,
zìjǐ búhuì zhìzào wǔqì, jīngchángde
mǎi Rìběn gēn Yīngguó de zhuāngbèi.
Yījiūsìliùnián xīn zhèngfǔ chénglì
yǐhòu, yǒu yíge xīn zhèngcè, jiùshì
bǎifēnzhībāshí de wǔqì zhuāngbèi děi
zìjǐ zhìzào; bǎifēnzhìèrshí de wǔqì
zhuāngbèi kěyǐ xiàng wàiguó mǎi.
Kěshì zhège zhèngcè bùnéng luòshí,
yīnwèi kējì tài luòhòule. Cóng
Yījiūsìliùnián qǐ dào xiànzài, yǐjīng
hǎojǐshínián le, tāmen lián bùqiāng,
shǒuqiāng dōu bùnéng shēngchǎn.
Qiánnián, tāmen xiǎng pài rén dào
Zhōngguó lái xuéxí, kěshì bèi Shèhuì-
dìguózhǔyì de guójiā gānrǎo; Jiǎguó
zhèngfǔ yǒu yìdiǎnr hàipà, jiù bùgǎn
pài rén lái le. Shàngcì wǒ qù fǎng-
wèn de shíhou wǒ gēn tāmen zhèngfǔ
de rén shuō, rúguǒ yào bǎ kējì gēn

不能怕别人干扰破坏。有一个甲国干部问我要是他们向咱们中国学习怎么实现四个现代化，五年以后，有没有钱生产空对空导弹、战斗机、鱼雷艇，什么的。我说问题不是五年以后有没有钱生产武器，而是五年以后能不能生产那些武器。如果五年以后，甲国的科技还是很落后，那么就是有钱，也没有用。

十一月三十号我离开甲国，坐火车到乙国。他们训练军队的情况我今天没有时间讲了。我现在先报告他们武器的情况，明天再讲军队的情况吧。乙国的科技水平比甲国高的多，所以把国防搞上去是没有问题的。他们从一九六五年起就搞六个现代化，六年以后就都实现了，成绩非常好。乙国的人口只有八千万，地方也不大，可是政府和群众了解实现六个

guófáng gāoshàngqu, jiù bùnéng pà biérén gānrǎo pǒhuài. Yǒu yíge Jiǎguó gānbù wèn wǒ yàoshi tāmen xiàng zánmen Zhōngguó xuéxí zěnmeshíxiàn sìge xiāndàihuà, wūniányǐhòu, yǒu méiyóu qián shēngchǎnkōng-duì-kōng dǎodàn, zhàndòujī, yúléitǐng, shénmede. Wǒ shuō wèntí búshi wūnián yǐhòu yǒu méiyóu qián shēngchǎn wǔqì, érshí wūnián yǐhòu néng bùnéng shēngchǎn nàxiē wǔqì. Rúguǒ wūnián yǐhòu, Jiǎguó de kējì háishi hěn luòhòu, nàme jiùshì yǒu qián, yě méiyóu yòng.

Shíyiyuè sānshíhào wǒ líkāi Jiǎguó zuò huǒchē dào Yǐguó. Tāmen xùnliàn jūnduì de qíngkuàng wǒ jīntiān méiyóu shíjiān jiǎng le. Wǒ xiànzài xiān bàogào tāmen wǔqì de qíngkuàng, míngtiān zài jiǎng jūnduì de qíngkuàng ba. Yǐguóde kējì shuǐpíng bǐ Jiǎguó gāode duō, suǒyǐ bā guófáng gāoshàngqu shì méiyóu wèntí de. Tāmen cóng Yījiǔliùwūnián qǐ jiù gāo liùge xiāndàihuà, liùniányǐhòu jiù dōu shíxiànle, chéngjī fēicháng hǎo. Yǐguóde rénkǒu zhǐyǒu

现代化是为了国家和人民的利益，所以工作非常努力。很快地就做出了非常大的贡献。现在他们不但能制造鱼雷艇和战斗机，也能制造空对空导弹了。他们生产的发动机性能很好。许多先进国家也向他们买。

我访问了甲国和乙国以后，认为咱们应该向甲国学习训练空军，帮助甲国发展他们的科技跟国防。咱们在发展和制造武器装备这方面应该向乙国学习，因为咱们的水平跟乙国的差距不大，七年以后，就可以赶上了。

bāqiānwàn, dìfang yě búda, kěshi zhèngfǔ hé qúnzhòng liǎojiě shíxiàn liùge xiàndàihuà shì wèile guójiā hé rénmín de lìyì, suǒyǐ gōngzuò fēicháng nǔlì. Hēnkuàide jiù zuòchūle fēicháng dà de gòngxiàn. Xiànzài tāmen búdàn néng zhìzào yúléitǐng hé zhàndòujī, yě néng zhìzào kōng-duì-kōng dǎodàn le. Tāmen shēngchǎn de fādòngjī xìngnéng hěn hǎo. Xǔduō xiānjìn guójiā yě xiàng tāmen mǎi.

Wǒ fǎngwènle Jiǎguó hé Yǐguó yǐhòu, rènwéi zánmen yīnggāi xiàng Jiǎguó xuéxí xùnliàn kōngjūn, bāngzhù Jiǎguó fāzhǎn tāmen de kējì gēn guó-fáng. Zánmen zài fāzhǎn hé zhìzào wǔqì zhuāngbèi zhè fāngmian yīnggāi xiàng Yǐguó xuéxí, yīnwèi zánmende shuǐpíng gēn Yǐguóde chājù bú dà, qīnián yǐhòu jiù kěyǐ gǎnshàngle.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. Who sent the speaker abroad last November?
2. Why can't the speaker mention the names of the two countries?
3. What was his purpose of visiting country Jia and country Yi (be specific)?
4. What was the political ideology embraced by Jia and Yi?
5. In what respect can't Jia's government and people with Yi?
6. What in Jia wasn't as high as that in Yi?

7. How many days did he spend visiting Jia?

8. How does the training of Jia's (1) Army, (2) Navy, and (3) Air Force compare with the training of their counterparts in China?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)

9. What was/were not stressed in Jia's Army training(2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

10. What was the cadre's response when the speaker asked him why firing wasn't emphasized?

11. What part/subject in Jia's naval training needed improvement?

12. What illustrations did the speaker give when he described Jia's Air Force training as very good (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

13. What kind of government did Jia have in the pre-1946 days?

14. Where did the old government procure its equipment(2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

15. What was the policy of the new government (be specific)?
16. What happened to this policy?
17. What happened the year before last when Jia wanted to send people to China to study?
18. What was the question asked by a cadre of Jia (be specific)?
19. What was the speaker's response to the cadre's question (be specific)?
20. Since when had Yi been pushing modernizations?
21. When were the modernizations accomplished?
22. What is Yi's population?

23. Why does the government and the masses work so hard for the modernizations?

24. What can Yi manufacture now (3)?

(1)

(2)

(3)

25. Describe the engines made by Yi.

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. Who sent the speaker abroad last November?
(The Party Central Committee.)
2. Why can't the speaker mention the names of the two countries?
(He was forbidden [by the Party Central Committee].)
3. What was his purpose of visiting country Jia and country Yi
(be specific)?
(To understand the developments of their weapons and training programs)
4. What was the political ideology embraced by Jia and Yi?
(Socialism)
5. In what respect can't Jia's government and people compare with Yi?
(Their enthusiasm for socialism)
6. What in Jia wasn't as high as that in Yi?
(The level of science and technology)
7. How many days did he spend visiting Jia?
(More than twenty days)
8. How does the training of Jia's (1) Army, (2) Navy, and (3) Air Force
compare with the training of their counterparts in China?
(1) (Jia's Army was inferior to China's)
(2) (The Navy was about the same level)
(3) (The Air Force was better)

9. What was/were not stressed in Jia's Army training (2)?
 - (1) (Marksmanship)
 - (2) (Tactics)

10. What was the cadre's response when the speaker asked him why firing wasn't emphasized?

(The cadre said that it was the government's policy)

OR (He didn't know why)

11. What part/subject in Jia's naval training needed improvement?

(Coordination with Army in amphibious operations [needed improvement])

12. What illustrations did the speaker give when he described Jia's Air Force training as very good (2)?
 - (1) (250 hours flying time before graduation)
 - (2) (Doing well at the training bombing)

13. What kind of government did Jia have in the pre-1946 days?

(Reactionary [government])

14. Where did the old government procure its equipment (2)?

([Buying equipment] from 1. Japan and 2. Great Britain)

15. What was the policy of the new government (be specific)?

(80% of the weapons and equipment should be produced in Jia; only 20% of them could be imported)

16. What happened to this policy?

([The policy] couldn't be implemented)

17. What happened the year before last when Jia wanted to send people to China to study?

(Interference by a socialist-imperialistic country)

WAE, Unit 1

18. What was the question asked by a cadre of Jia (be specific)?
(Five years after they have learned the four modernizations from China, would they have money to build air-to-air guided missiles, fighters, torpedo boats, etc.)
19. What was the speaker's response to the cadre's question (be specific)?
(The issue is not money, the issue is whether Jia has the capabilities to manufacture weapons five years later)
20. Since when had Yi been pushing modernizations?
([Since] 1965)
21. When were the modernizations accomplished?
([In] 1971)
22. What is Yi's population?
(80,000,000)
23. Why does the government and the masses work so hard for the modernizations?
([They understand that the four modernizations was] for the benefit of both the nation and the people)
24. What can Yi manufacture now (3)?
(1) (torpedo boats)
(2) (fighters)
(3) (air-to-air guided missiles)
25. Describe the engines made by Yi.
([The engines are of] high quality, [even the advanced nations buy engines from her])

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 请你说一说战斗机在跟敌人作战的时候的任务是什么？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zhàn dòuji zài gēn dírén zuòzhàn de shíhou de rènwù shì shénme?

2. 为什么在一九四〇年以前解放军的装备都是美国或是日本制造的？

Wèishénme zài yījiūsìlíngnián yǐqián Jiěfàngjūn de zhuāngbèi dōushi Měiguó huòshi Rìběn zhìzào de?

3. 中国为了要落实四个现代化，为什么先要把工业搞上去？

Zhōngguó wèile yào luòshí sìge xiàndàihuà, wèishénme xiān yào bǎ gōngyè gǎoshàngqu?

4. 战士在操练刺刀刺杀技术的时候要掌握刺杀的目标吗？为什么？

Zhànshì zài cāoliàn cìdāo cìshā jìshù de shíhou yào zhǎngwò cìshā de mùbiāo ma? Wèishénme?

5. 空军在作战的时候，什么飞机用导弹射击？目的是什么？

Kōngjūn zài zuòzhàn de shíhou, shénme fēiji yòng dǎodàn shèjī? Mùdì shì shénme?

6. 现在世界上有哪些是先进国家？中国计划要多少年以后才能在科技上赶上他们？

Xiànzài shìjièshàng yǒu nǎxiē shì xiānjìn guójiā? Zhōngguó jìhuà yào duōshǎonián yǐhòu cái néng zài kējìshàng gǎnshàng tāmen?

7. 中国大学里头/里边的学生学习制造武器和装备吗? 为什么?
Zhōngguó dàxué lǐtòu/lǐbianr de xuésheng xuéxí zhìzào wǔqì hé zhuāngbèi ma? Wèishénme?
8. 1940年以前国民党制造的武器质量并不好, 为什么解放军还用来作战?
Yījiūsìlíngnián yǐqián guómíndǎng zhìzào de wǔqì zhìliàng bìngbuhǎo, wèishénme Jiěfàngjūn hái yònglai zuòzhàn?
9. 解放军的战士都是经过特别挑选出来的吗? 都有些什么条件?
Jiěfàngjūn de zhànshì dōushi jīngguò tèbié tiāoxuǎnchūlái de ma? Dōu yǒuxiē shénme tiáojiàn?
10. 请说一说打倒四人帮对落实四个现代化有什么帮助?
Qǐng shuōyishuō dǎdǎo sìrénbāng duì luòshí sìge xiàndàihuà yǒu shénme bāngzhù?
11. 手榴弹有什么用? 只有陆军战士才用手榴弹吗? 为什么?
Shǒuliúdàn yǒu shénme yòng? Zhǐyǒu lùjūn zhànshì cái yòng shǒuliúdàn ma? Wèishénme?
12. 海军常常晚上作登陆战演习吗? 都需要些什么装备?
Hǎijūn chángcháng wǎnshang zuò dēnglùzhàn yǎnxí ma? Dōu xūyào xiē shénme zhuāngbèi?
13. 听说有很多新武器中国不是不会制造, 而是不打算制造, 为什么?
Tīngshuō yǒu hěnduō xīnwǔqì Zhōngguó búshì búhuì zhìzào, érshì bùdǎsuàn zhìzào, wèishénme?

14. 中国的海军配合海防部队作战的鱼雷艇多不多？为什么鱼雷艇适合担任巡逻的任务？
Zhōngguó de hǎijūn pèihé hǎifáng bùduì zuòzhàn de yúléitǐng duōbùduō?
Wèishénme yúléitǐng shìhé dānrèn xúnluó de rènwù?
15. 请你说一说四人帮破坏了哪些科技研究计划？
Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō sìrénbāng pòhuài le nǎxiē kējì yánjiū jìhuà?
16. 中国制造的导弹的性能为什么还赶不上先进国家的水平？
Zhōngguó zhìzào de dǎodàn de xìngnéng wèishénme hái gǎnbùshàng xiānjīn guójiā de shuǐpíng?
17. 扔手榴弹需要技术吗？扔的时候包括几个动作？为什么？
Rēng shǒuliúdàn xūyào jìshù ma? Rēng de shíhòu bāokuò jǐge dòngzuò?
Wèishénme?
18. 战斗机的任务是轰炸敌人的阵地吗？为什么？
Zhàn dòuji de rènwù shì hōngzhà dírén de zhèndì ma? Wèishénme?
19. 美国制造的雷达高射炮比苏联的好吗？为什么？
Měiguó zhìzào de léidá gāoshèpào bǐ Sūlián de hǎo ma? Wèishénme?
20. 请你说一说为什么目前中国海军部队着重用鱼雷艇作战？
Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō wèishénme mùqián Zhōngguó hǎijūn bùduì zhuózhòng yòng yúléitǐng zuòzhàn?
21. 中国边防的任务是正规军担任还是民兵担任？为什么？
Zhōngguó biānfáng de rènwù shì zhèngguījūn dānrèn háishì mínbīng dānrèn? Wèishénme?

22. 为什么中国现在在科技方面跟先进国家比较，还有很大的差距？

Wèishénme Zhōngguó xiànzài zài kējì fāngmian gēn xiānjìn guójiā bǐjiào, hái yǒu hěn dàde chājù?

23. 中国空军战斗机的飞行训练也包括雷达的操作和偷袭的技术吗？为什么？

Zhōngguó kōngjūn zhàndòuji de fēixíng xùnlìan yě bāokuò léidá de cāozuò hé tōuxí de jìshù ma? Wèishénme?

24. 为什么战士受基本训练的时候要操练立正和稍息的动作？

Wèishénme zhànshì shòu jīběn xùnlìan de shíhou yào cāoliàn lìzhèng hé shāoxī de dòngzuò?

25. 党中央要落实四个现代化把国防跟科技搞上去，科技人员能作出很大的贡献吗？为什么？

Dǎng zhōngyāng yào luòshí sìge xiàndàihuà bǎ guófáng gēn kējì gāoshàngqu, kējì rényuán néng zuòchū hěn dàde gòngxiàn ma? Wèishénme?

26. 中国在1960年以后就不用外国制造的武器了，为什么？

Zhōngguó zài yījiǔliùlíngnián yǐhòu jiù búyòng wàiguó zhìzào de wǔqì le, wèishénme?

27. 中国青年满了十八岁就得服兵役吗？还有什么其他的条件？

Zhōngguó qīngnián mǎnle shíbāsui jiù děi fúbīngyì ma? Hái yǒu shénme qítāde tiáojiàn?

28. 请你说一说雷达高射炮跟普通高射炮，哪一种高射炮的性能比较好？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō léidá gāoshèpào gēn pǔtōng gāoshèpào, nǎyīzhǒng gāoshèpào de xìngnéng bǐjiào hǎo?

29. 中国空军在 1960 年以后的装备跟 1940 年以前的差距很大吗？制造了哪些新武器？

Zhōngguó kōngjūn zài yījiūliùlíngnián yǐhòu de zhuāngbèi gēn yījiūsīlíngnián yǐqián de chājù hěn dà ma? Zhìzào le nǎxiē xīn wǔqì?

30. 中国的科技，国防赶上了现代国家的水平以后，会不会先进攻外国？为什么？

Zhōngguó de kējì, guófáng gǎnshàngle xiàndài guójiā de shuǐpíng yǐhòu, huì bu huì xiān jìngōng wàiguó? Wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. We saw many enemy tanks and bunkers while flying low. We couldn't see much because some enemy guns were firing at us, but we still destroyed some of the enemy fortifications.

2. Recently the artillery pieces here have been having frequent malfunctions. If a problem develops, repairs must be made. In the future, we have to emphasize quality when buying guns.

3. I discovered some black things on the radar - at first I thought they were airplanes or torpedo boats, but afterwards I knew that the radar had developed a malfunction.

4. This factory is a military factory; all the shells and bombs used by our troops are manufactured in this factory. The workers in the factory make a great contribution to national defense.

5. After liberation the fighter planes used by our Air Force were all manufactured in the Soviet Union since; at that time, our industry couldn't compare with theirs.

6. We must develop our science and technology; otherwise, we will fall behind the Soviet Union. The Soviets are included among the world's advanced nations.

7. The airplane just landed, but before it landed it certainly didn't notify the airfield first.

8. The airport doesn't have any activity now; all the fighter planes have landed, and the other planes are not ready to take off.

9. If that large mountain is too high we cannot use trucks to transport the parts and materials and will have to use an airplane.

10. It isn't the Gang of Four but rather the Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party which did not carry out the modernization of the PLA.

11. The performance of our air-to-air missiles can't compare with ones made in England. We have to improve our research in the future.

12. A large part of our equipment, such as engines, etc., can be made in our country if we improve the capabilities of our factories and eliminate any social-imperialists.

WAE, Unit 1

13. The 3203rd Unit does not have enough training, and a majority of its weapons are old. I feel it can't make any contribution to the national defense.
14. You can use this fighter plane for your research, but if you break it you will have to fix it.
15. It isn't that the air-to-air missiles are bad but rather our pilots don't know how to use them correctly.
16. The Communist Party has caused our country to lag behind Taiwan; we have to stress science and technology and implement modernization to bring about the establishment of an advanced socialist nation.
17. The gap between the PRC and Taiwan is still great; the Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party must lead the country in modernization.
18. The Nationalist fortifications were very close to the enemy position; therefore, it became the target of attack by enemy tanks and planes.
19. From 1979 on, the United States government had an embassy in Beijing. In the U.S. the people who supported the KMT felt that this was a mistake.

20. Workers, farmers, and soldiers must all be ready for a surprise attack. In time of war everyone must contribute to the national defense.
21. The performance of this type of fighter plane is not very good; it is not equipped with radar and it doesn't have instruments so it can't fly IFR.
22. We always hear that the Gang of Four caused destruction and made our country be backward. Did they make any contributions to the country?
23. The year after next we will implement a plan to modernize the Liberation Army. National defense is a very serious matter.
24. Our tanks developed malfunctions, not because they were of poor quality, but rather we didn't have enough parts to fix them.
25. The cadre asked the Army officer why the artillery was not hitting the target accurately and why his men were wasting artillery shells.
26. The officer answered that, because of the destruction of the Gang of Four, his soldiers studied the wrong subjects and therefore could not be depended on to aim properly.

27. The Soviet soldiers repeatedly fire live ammunition at our positions. Our officers and men all want to attack the Soviet positions and strike the social-imperialists.

28. After liberation, a majority of the enemy soldiers returned to their country; however, some stayed here and joined the Liberation Army.

29. While inspecting the torpedo boat I saw something that looked like a large banana; it was a piece of equipment but I don't know what kind.

30. To modernize the country we have a lot of students studying abroad doing scientific research; it will be a real pity if they decide not to return to this country.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Yǒude rén juéde Zhōngguóde kējì hái hěn luòhòu, zěnme néng zài èrshínián yǐnèi shíxiàn sìge xiàndàihuà ne? Shìshíshang shì kěnéngde, yīnwèi Zhōngguórén de zhīhuì hěn gāo yòu yǒu guāngdàde láodònglǐ, zhǐyào dàjiā gōngzuò dōu yǒu jǐjìxìng, yěxǔ búyòng èrshínián jiù kěyǐ shíxiànle.
2. Yáng Tóngzhì shì wǒmen zhèsōu yúléitǐngshàng xīnláide fùzérén. Tā zuòshìde fāngfǎ gēn cóngqián de fùzérén bùtóng; tā jiào wǒmen měitiān zǎoshang zǎo bànxiǎoshí qǐlái, yìqǐ xiān zuò tǐcāo, cái chī zǎofàn. Kāishǐ de shíhou dàjiā bùxíguàn, rìzǐ jiǔle yǐhòu, dàjiā juéde rúguǒ zǎoshang búyùndòng yìhuǐr, zhēngtiān jiù bùshūfu.
3. Dǎngwěi cānguānle wǒmen biānfāng bùduì de fāngyù gōngshì yǐhòu shuō, "Yìbānláishuō, nǐmen bùduìde gōngshì gòuzhùde hěn búcuò, zhǐshì yǒu yíge quēdiǎn: jiùshì jiāotōngháo búgòu kuān. Zài zhànshí, gōngshì hé gōngshì zhōngjiān, bǐcǐde wǔqì, dānyào zài zhǐyuán zhè fāngmian huì fāshēng wèntí. Qǐng nǐmen zài yánjiū, gǎiliáng yíxià."
4. Zhīhuìyuán pàilái èrshíge zhànshí dào wǒmen dānwài lái bāngzhù wǒmen gòuzhù qiǎnháo. Dānwèide fùzérén yíkan, tāmen zhōngjiān yǒu sānge shì nǚde, fùzérén jiù wèn tāmen, "gòuzhù qiǎnháo de gōngzuò hěn zhòng, yào búyào wǒ gěi nǐmen ānpái qítāde gōngzuò?" Tāmen sānge rén tǒngshí shuō, "Búyòng, búyòng, nán tóngzhì néng zuòde shì wǒmen dōu néng zuò."

5. Wáng Dàguāng shòuwánle rùwǔ xùnliàn yǐhòu, zǔzhǐ pài tā dào Dōngběide biānfāng bùduì qù fúyì. Nà yìnián, shèhuì dìguózhǔyì qīnlüè Zhōngguóde biānjǐng, Wáng Dàguāng yòng shǒuliúdàn shāshāngle shíjǐge dìrén. Kěshi tā yě gěi zǐdàn dǎzhòngle, hái méi láidejí sòng yīyuàn jiù sile.

6. Xiǎo Jīn zài bùduì fúyì qīmǎn, yào tuīwǔde shíhou, tā qǐngqiú chāoqǐ fú xiànyì. Fùzérén gào su tā chūfēi tā yǒu tèbiéde jīnéng fǒuzé méiyǒu fázi liúxiàlai. Xiǎo Jīn shuō, "wǒ lǐfǎ de jìshù fēicháng hǎo, tì tóngzhìmen lǐfǎ kéyì wèi guójiā shèngqián." Fùzérén xiǎnglèxiǎng shuō, "Hǎoba, nǐ kéyì chāoqǐ fú xiànyì."

7. Gàn bù duì lái fǎngwèn de wàiguó xīnwén rényuán shuō, "zài Yījīūsìjīunián yìqián, bǎifēnzhījiūshí yīshàngde Zhōngguó rén qióngde lián fàn yě méidé chí. Jiěfàng yǐhòu, rénrén dōu yǒu gōngzuò, dōu zhīde bǎo, jiājiā dōu yǒu zìxíngchē, dōu yǒu bàndǎotǐ shōuyīnjī."

8. Sìrénbāng gānrǎo pòhuài Zhōngguóde shēngchǎn hé jiànshè, yǒu hǎoxiē kējì yánjiū dōu bùdébù tíngxiàlai. Xiànzài kāishǐ fāzhǎn kējì yǐjīng wǎnle shíjǐnián.

9. Jīntiān wǒmen gōngchǎngde fùzérén zài kāihuì de shíhou duì dàjiā shuō, "mùqián wǒmen shēngchǎnde diànshìjī háishi gǎnbushang rénmínde xūyào, zhèshí yīnwei wǒmen zhōngwǔ xiūxide shíhou tài cháng, yòngqùle hěnduō gōngzuòde shíjiān. Cóng xià Xīngqīyī kāishǐ wǒmen zhōngwǔ zhǐnéng yòng bànxiǎoshí lái xiūxi, duōchūlai de bànxiǎoshí yònglai gōngzuò!"

10. Xiànzài Zhōngguóde guófáng gōngyè jìshù háishi hěn luòhòu. Bǐfāngshuō, gōngchǎng yòngde fādòngjī dōu xūyào yóu wàiguó jìnkǒu. Búguò, Dǎngzhōngyāng yǐjīng juédìng cóng jīnnián kāishǐ wǔnián yǐnèi wǒmen yào tèbié zhuózhòng shēngchǎn fādòngjī, wǔnián yǐhòu búhuì zài yīkào wàiguó.

11. Xiǎo Zhāng shì jiěfàng yǐhòu cóng Měiguó huílai de kējì rényuán. Tāde fùqīn yǐqián gěi fāndòngpài zuòguo shì, suǒyī suǐrán shíjīniánlái tā duì fāzhǎn Zhōngguóde kējì, tèbié shì zhàndòujī de yánjiū yǒu hěndàde gòngxiàn, Dǎngzhōngyāng yìzhí méi tóngyì tā cānjiā Gòngchǎndǎng, jīnnián Yìyuè, Dǎngzhōngyāng tóngzhǐ tā kéyì bàn cānjiā Gòngchǎndǎng shǒuxù le.

12. Zuótiān Dǎngzhōngyāng pàile yíwèi gāojí gàn bù dào Běijīng dàxué lái cānguān, tā gào su huānyíng tāde xuésheng shuō, "wǒmen Zhōngguó guófáng lí xiàndàihuà háiyǒu hěndàde chājù, yuányīn shì wǒmen quēfá dǒng kējì de rényuán, duì wǒmen guójiā lái shuō shì fēicháng wēixiǎn de shì, xīwàng gèwèi tóngzhǐ nǚlì xuéxí, yìqǐ wèi guófáng zuòchū gòngxiàn."

13. Wáng Yǒunián shì zài jiěfàng yǐqián jiù cānjiā Zhōngguó Gòngchǎndǎng yóujīduì de lǎo gàn bù. Xīn Zhōngguó chénglì yǐhòu, Dǎngzhōngyāng pài tā dānrèn Shànghǎi wūzhuāng mínbǐng de zhǐhuīyuán, fùzé bǎohù Shànghǎi fùjīnde jūnshì jīdì hé shèbèi.

14. Jīntiān zǎoshang chǎngzhǎng zài kāihuìde shíhou shuō, "wǒ zhècì chūchāi dào Shànghǎi, Guǎngzhōu qù cānguān jǐjiā zìxíngchē gōngchǎng, juéde tāmen shēngchǎnde zìxíngchē shù mù suǐrán méiyǒu wǒmende duō, kěshì zhìliàng bǐ wǒmende hǎo, wǒ xīwàng cóng xiànzài qǐ wǒmen yào zhùyì bǎ zhìliàng gāoshàngqu."

15. Lǐ Xiǎolán shì Shànghǎi yìjiā fǎngzhǐchǎngde gōngren. Tāde àiren shì Nánjīng qìchēchǎngde jìshù rényuán duì qìchē fādòngjī shēngyóu de yánjiū hěn yǒu gòngxiàn, zǔzhǐ jiù fēnpài Lǐ Xiǎolán dào Nánjīngde fǎngzhǐchǎng gōngzuò, zhème yí lái, tāmen jiù kéyǐ tiāntiān jiànmiànle.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate," because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 1

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Wáng Déwén is discussing the status of the PRC's equipment and research and development with John Rogers, a tourist in Shanghai.

1. R: I understand that most of the equipment used by the People's Liberation Army before 1949 was made in the United States. Is that right?

W: 你说的对。大部分的装备都是美国造的。其它的呢，日本造的也有，国民党造的也有。一九四九到一九六〇年之间，大部分是苏联造的。

Nǐ shuōde duì, dàbùfen de zhuāngbèi dōu shì Měiguó zàode. Qítāde ne, Rìběn zàode yě yǒu, Guómíndǎng zàode yě yǒu. Yījiǔsìjiǔ dào Yījiǔliùlíngnián zhījiān, dàbùfen shì Sūlián zàode.

2. R: Where do you get most of your equipment now?

W: 从一九六〇年起，差不多所有的装备都是中国自己制造的了。

Cóng Yījiǔliùlíngnián qǐ, chàbùduō suǒyǒude zhuāngbèi dōu shì Zhōngguó zìjǐ zhìzàode le.

3. R: Then you don't buy anything at all from the Soviet Union now?

W: 不买了。我们不能依靠敌人给我们东西。刚刚解放的时候，我们以为苏联是我们的朋友，后来才发现他们并不是我们的朋友。苏联以为他们不帮助我们，我们就会落后。他们没想到就是没有他们帮助我们还是可以实现四个现代化。

Bùmǎile. Wǒmen bùnéng yīkào dírén gěi wǒmen dōngxi. Gānggāng jiěfàng de shíhou, wǒmen yǐwéi Sūlián shì wǒmende péngyou, hòulái cái fāxiàn tāmen bìng búshì wǒmende péngyou. Sūlián yǐwéi tāmen bùbāngzhù wǒmen, wǒmen jiù huì luòhòu. Tāmen méi xiǎngdào jiùshì méiyǒu tāmen bāngzhù wǒmen hái shì kéyǐ shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà.

4. R: I've heard that China's science and technology are backward. How is it that you can manufacture weapons and equipment without advanced research and development?

W: 因为解放军的装备比较落后, 所以党中央努力落实军队的现代化, 那么才可以提高解放军保卫祖国的能力。目前, 党中央一方面进行研究发展的工作, 一方面向外国学习科技。

Yīnwèi Jiěfàngjūn de zhuāngbèi bǐjiào luòhòu, suǒyì Dǎngzhōngyāng nǔlì luòshí jūnduìde xiàndàihuà, nàme cái keyì tígāo Jiěfàngjūn bǎowèi zǔguó de nénglì. Mùqián, Dǎngzhōngyāng yìfāngmiàn jìnxíng yánjiū fāzhǎn de gōngzuò, yìfāngmiàn xiàng wàiguó xuéxí kējì.

5. R: That would greatly improve your national defense, but will you be able to catch up with the standards held by the more advanced nations?

W: 要是没有四人帮在科技跟其他方面干扰破坏, 我们早就赶上了。将来我们的四个现代化实现了以后, 一定赶得上先进国家的水平。

Yàoshi méiyǒu Sìrénbāng zài kējì gēn qítā fāngmiàn gǎnrǎo pòhuài, wǒmen zǎo jiù gǎnshàngle. Jiānglái wǒmende Sìge Xiàndàihuà shíxiànle yǐhòu, yídìng gǎndeshàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng.

6. R: Do you buy equipment and weapons such as air-to-air missiles, fighter planes, engines, etc., from foreign government?

W: 当然得买。你知道我们制造的发动机, 性能比不上外国的。其他的东 西, 象空对空导弹、战斗机, 等等, 也比不上外国的。不过我们自己也正在发展这些武器。

Dāngrán děi mǎi. Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen zhìzàode fādòngjī, xìngnéng bǐbushàng wàiguóde. Qítāde dōngxi, xiàng kōngduìkōngdǎodàn, zhàn dòujī, dēngděng, yě bǐbushàng wàiguóde. Búguò wǒmen zìjǐ yě zhèngzài fāzhǎn zhèxiē wǔqì.

7. R: What is that building over there?

W: 我们的科技研究单位就在那儿。那些科技人员对我们的四个现代化可真作出了很大的贡献。

Wǒmende kējì yánjiū dānwèi jiù zài nàr. Nàxiē kējì rényuán duì wǒmende Sìge Xiàndàihuà kě zhēn zuòchūle hěndàde gòngxiàn.

8. R: Is all the research that is done there military?

W: 大部分的研究工作都是跟军事有关系的。不久以前党中央要科技人员进行跟军事方面没有关系的研究发展工作, 比方说, 怎么改良农业工具的性能。

Dàbùfen de yánjiū gōngzuò dōu shì gēn jūnshì yǒu guānxi de. Bùjiǔ yǐqián Dǎngzhōngyāng yào kējì rényuán jìnxíng gēn jūnshì fāngmiàn méiyǒu guānxi de yánjiū fāzhǎn gōngzuò, bǐfāngshuō, zěnmē gǎiliáng nóngyè gōngjù de xìngnéng.

9. R: I suppose that much more research is being done now than was formerly.

W: 是的。解放以前, 国民党从来不注意怎么把群众的生活搞上去。现在可不同了。共产党认为最重要的工作是把群众的生活搞好。

Shìde. Jiěfàng yǐqián, Guómíndǎng cónglái búzhùyì zěnmē bǎ qúnzhòngde shēnghuó gǎoshàngqù. Xiànzài kě bùtóngle. Gòngchǎndǎng rènwéi zuì zhòngyào de gōngzuò shì bǎ qúnzhòngde shēnghuó gǎo hǎo.

10. R: Now that our two countries are becoming more open toward one another, perhaps your country can improve its science and technology much more rapidly by becoming acquainted with the research and development done by some of my countrymen.

W: 你说的很对。我也希望你的国家帮助我们中国实现四个现代化。

Nǐ shuōde hěn duì. Wǒ yě xīwàng nǐde guójiā bāngzhù wǒmen Zhōngguó shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: A PRC Air Force officer, a production officer, and a member of the Central Committee have met to discuss the failure of the PLA to occupy several small islands located off the coast of China.

Role 1: Comrade Cao is the representative of the Central Committee. It is the opinion of the Central Committee that the attack was smashed because the Air Force was unable to destroy the enemy aircraft on their airfields. As a result, the Navy had to try to destroy the enemy defense works near the seashore by themselves. He wants to know why the Air Force was not able to destroy the enemy fighter planes, and how their original plans went wrong. He also wants to know how and when the problems of the air attack can be eliminated, as well as how the actual attack differed from the original Air Force plan of attack.

Role 2: Major Li was the commander of the Air Force attack units. Their original plan was to destroy the enemy military airfields during the night before the amphibious landing, and then to coordinate with the amphibious landing forces commander in order to help them destroy the enemy fortifications near the seashore. However, when the air attack began, they discovered that the enemy had too many radar positions, and that their intelligence information as to the locations of the radar positions was wrong. Therefore, it became impossible to accomplish a sneak attack on the enemy airfields. Although the PRC Air Force had many more airplanes attacking than the enemy had defending, the PRC planes were armed only with cannon and very old air-to-air missiles. One-to-one, the PRC airplanes could not be compared with the enemy aircraft, and 80% of the PRC aircraft were destroyed within the first hour of the attack by the enemy's fighters and antiaircraft guns.

Role 3: Comrade Zhou was responsible for Air Force military weapons manufacturing for the attack units. He feels that the enemy's fighters were much more effective because the majority of them were bought from the advanced nations rather than produced by the enemy, and therefore their air-to-air missiles and airplane engines were much better than the PRC fighters. Three years ago, the PRC began modernization of PRC fighter production and weapons production, but the PRC is still lagging behind in both aircraft and weapons performance. He feels that it will be at least five more years before their science and technology can be compared to that of the advanced nations, and that their intelligence gathering units have no hope of catching up with the advanced nations.

Scenario 2

Situation: The "Chang Jiang" factory has become a model of production in the PRC for the manufacture of airplane engines. The Central Committee has sent a representative to the factory to talk to the heads of the production unit and the research unit.

Role 1: Comrade Sun is the representative of the Central Committee. He wishes to thank the factory workers for their contribution to the national defense in the production of airplane engines. He also wants to find out how the factory managed to improve their production techniques, so that other PRC factories can compare techniques and improve their production. He also wants to find out if there has been any outside interference with production by the reactionary elements, or if there have been any disturbances by the factory workers which have effected production.

Role 2: Comrade Jiang is the factory manager. When he first came to the factory in 1965, there were still many members of the Nationalist Party working there who still had not revised their counterrevolutionary thoughts. These reactionaries often cause the factory to lag behind in production, and the quality of production was often poor. It wasn't that their production techniques were bad, but rather that their thoughts were incorrect; so that there was no way for these elements to contribute to production, they could only interfere. In 1966, Jiang started holding daily meetings to try to reform the thoughts of these people, and after a month or so, their thoughts had been completely reformed. The reactionary section chiefs were then able to make important contributions to factory production.

Role 3: Comrade Zhou was assigned to the factory in 1970 as the section chief for the science and technology research section, as a part of the modernization program. He feels that the greatest contribution made by the research unit was in the modernization of equipment and the improvement of production techniques. Originally, the workers considered the research personnel to be technicians only, and could not understand that the researchers were also workers. But after studying the thoughts of the Central Committee, everyone started working together. From that time on, the production techniques and equipment have constantly improved day by day. He feels that neither one worker nor one researcher can make an important contribution; only by working together can they contribute to production and catch up with the advanced nations.

Scenario 3

Situation: A high-ranking member of the Central Committee has arranged a meeting with an Air Force officer and a PRC coastal defense officer.

Role 1: Major Zhao is the commander of the coastal defense units in Guangzhou (Province). His primary concern is defending against enemy aircraft, as the units concerned with defending against enemy amphibious assault have already completed their modernization programs and have excellent coordination with the militia units in the area. He feels that if the enemy uses its aircraft to attack and destroy the defense works along the seacoast, he will have no way to defend against the enemy attack. His units only have 800 antiaircraft guns (40% radar-aimed) and about 2000 machine guns, and he feels that they need at least 2000 antiaircraft guns in order to defend the seacoast effectively. He feels that they must improve the air defenses immediately in order to destroy the enemy attacks.

Role 2: Major Ma is the commander of the Air Force units in the province. Aircraft (fighters) to be used for national defense includes 500 fighters, of which 100 are comparable to the fighters of the advanced nations. Of the 400 remaining fighters, only 150 can be armed with air-to-air missiles. Though some modernization has been carried out on the older planes, their fighter performance is improving too slowly--they are continuing to lag behind in the areas of air-to-air missile development and fighter engine development and production; so the PRC fighters are not only slower than the enemy aircraft, but their weapons are not nearly as effective. Only by buying air-to-air missiles from the advanced nations will the PRC Air Force be able to contribute to the national defense.

Role 3: Comrade Yang is the representative of the Central Committee responsible for the national defense. His major concern is the effectiveness of the enemy's air attacks along the seacoast, as the PRC defensive units have been relatively ineffective against enemy air attack. He cannot understand why the coastal defense units cannot destroy the enemy fighter aircraft, or what they should do to make their air defense more effective. He is considering assigning coastal defense units from Fuzhou (Province) to improve the local coastal defense units, or training more militiamen in air defense techniques, but actually feels that the problem is one of either fighter performance or pilot training, and that additional antiaircraft guns will not improve the effectiveness of coastal defense.

UNIT 2

DIALOGUE

1. A: 步枪一定是解放军的基本武器吧?
B: 步枪和骑枪都是陆军的基本武器。我们的步枪大部份都是自动步枪跟半自动步枪。

2. A: “骑枪”是什么? 我没听说过。
B: “骑枪”也叫“卡宾枪”。比步枪短一点儿。

3. A: 除了步枪跟卡宾枪以外, 还有什么枪呢?
B: 此外, 还有轻机枪、重机枪、冲锋枪, 什么的。

4. A: 那种最有效?
B: 那要看什么情况下用。比如说, 敌人只有一、两个, 并且距离不超过四百公尺, 那么步枪或是骑枪最有效。可是, 如果在四百公尺以外, 就不太有效了。

5. A: 在什么情况下用冲锋枪呢?
B: 敌人离你很近, 你向他们冲锋、伏击他们或是跟他们巷战的时候, 就应该用冲锋枪, 因为火力猛、速度快。每分钟可以发射六百发子弹。

6. A: 如果敌人很多, 并且离你远呢?
B: 那么就要用轻机枪或是重机枪了。轻机枪的优点是可以在八百米以内杀伤敌人; 又可以连续发射又可点射。重机枪可以在一千米到两千米以内杀伤敌人。这两种机枪还可以用来掩护进攻的部队, 压制敌人的火力。

7. A: 有缺点没有?

B: 当然有。机枪比步枪, 什么的重得多, 构造也比较复杂。除了轻机枪有时候还可以有一个战士端着射击以外, 平常不能只有一个人操作

1. A: Bùqiāng yídìng shì Jiěfàngjūnde jībēn wǔqì ba? The rifle must be the Liberation Army's basic weapon, I suppose?
- B: Bùqiāng hé qíqiāng dōu shì lùjūnde jībēn wǔqì. Wǒmēnde bùqiāng dà bùfen dōu shì zìdòng bùqiāng gēn bànzìdòng bùqiāng. Both the rifle and the carbine are the Army's basic weapons. Most of our rifles are automatic rifles and semiautomatic rifles.
2. A: "Qíqiāng" shì shénme? Wǒ méitīngshuōguo. What's "qiqiang?" I've never heard of it.
- B: "Qíqiāng" yě jiào "kǎbīnqiāng". Bǐ bùqiāng duǎn yìdiǎnr. "Qiqiang" is also known as "kabin-qiāng." It's a little shorter than a rifle.
3. A: Chúle bùqiāng gēn kǎbīnqiāng yīwài, hái yǒu shénme qiāng ne? Besides rifles and carbines, what else do you have?
- B: Cǐwài, hái yǒu qīng jīqiāng, zhòng jīqiāng, chōngfēngqiāng, shénmede. In addition, there are light machine guns, heavy machine guns, submachine guns, etc.
4. A: Něizhǒng zuì yǒuxiào? Which kind is most effective?
- B: Nà yào kàn zài shénme qīngkuāngxia yòng. Bǐrú shuō, dírén zhǐ yǒu yīliǎngge, bìngqiě, jùlí bùchāoguo sībǎi gōngchǐ, nàme bùqiāng huòshì qíqiāng zuì yǒuxiào. Kěshì, rúguǒ zài sībǎi gōngchǐ yīwài, jiù bú tài yǒuxiào le. That depends on the circumstances under which you use it. For instance, (if) there are only one or two enemies and the distance doesn't exceed 400 meters, rifles or carbines would be most effective. However, if (they are) beyond 400 meters, then (they) wouldn't be too effective.

5. A: Zài shénme qíngkuàngxià yòng chōngfēngqiāng ne? Under what circumstance would you use a submachine gun?
- B: Dírén lí nǐ hěn jìn, nǐ xiàng tāmen chōngfēng, fújī tāmen, huòshi gēn tāmen xiàngzhàn de shíhou, jiù yīnggāi yòng chōngfēngqiāng, yīnwèi huǒlì měng, sùdù kuài. Měi fēnzhōng kěyǐ fāshè liùbǎifā zǐdàn. When the enemy is very close, and you are charging (at) them, ambushing them, or engaging them in street fighting, then you should use a submachine gun, because it has strong firepower and high speed. It can fire 600 rounds of ammo per minute.
6. A: Rúguǒ dírén hěn duō, bìngqiě lí nǐ yuǎn ne? What if the enemy is numerous, and (moreover) far away from you?
- B: Nàme, jiù yào yòng qīng jīqiāng huòshi zhòng jīqiāng le. Qīng jīqiāng de yōudiǎn shì kěyǐ zài bābǎimǐ yǐnèi shāshāng dírén, yòu kěyǐ liánxù fāshè yòu kěyǐ diǎnshè. Zhòngjīqiāng kěyǐ zài yìqiānmǐ dào liǎngqiān mǐ yǐnèi shāshāng dírén, Zhèi liǎngzhǒng jīqiāng hái kěyǐ yònglai yǎnhù jīngōng de bùduì, yāzhì dírén de huǒlì. In that case, we'd have to use light or heavy machine guns. The advantages of (using) a light machine gun are that it can kill or wound the enemy within 800 meters, and can be used for both continuous fire and fixed fire. A heavy machine gun can kill or wound the enemy within 1000-2000 meters. These two kinds of machine guns can also be used for covering the attacking troops and suppressing enemy's fire power.
7. A: Yǒu quēdiǎn méiyǒu? Are there any drawbacks?
- B: Dāngrán yǒu. Jīqiāng bǐ bùqiāng, shénmede zhòngde duō, gòuzào yě bǐjiào fùzá. Chūle qīng jīqiāng yǒu shíhou hái kěyǐ yóu yíge zhànshì duānzhe shèjī yīwài, píngcháng bùnéng zhǐ yóu yíge rén cāozuò. There surely are. Machine guns are much heavier than rifles etc., and their mechanism is also comparatively complicated. Except the light machine guns, which sometimes can be operated by one machine gunner, usually they can't be operated by only one person.

VOCABULARY

半自动	bànzìdòng	semiautomatic
超过	chāoguò	to exceed
冲锋	chōngfēng	to charge (mil.), to assault (mil.)
冲锋枪	chōngfēngqiāng	submachine gun (C: zhī)
点射	diǎnshè	to operate at fixed fire, fixed fire, firing in bursts
端	duān	to hold (with both hands) (in front of the person doing it)
发	fā	a round, cartridge, a counter word for ammunition
伏击	fújī	to ambush; ambush
复杂	fùzá	to be complicated
公尺	gōngchǐ	meter (unit of measurement)
火力	huǒlì	firepower
距离	jùlí	distance
卡宾枪	kǎbīnqiāng	carbine (C: zhī)
连续发射	liánxù fāshè/liánxù shèjī	continuous fire (mil.); to fire continuously (mil.)
猛	měng	to be strong, to be fierce
那要看...	Nà yào kàn...	That depends..., It depends...
枪	qiāng	gun (other than an artillery piece)
骑枪	qíqiāng	carbine (C: zhī)
缺点	quēdiǎn	drawback, defect, shortcoming, weak point
___手	___shou	a suffix attached to the name of a gun (e.g., bùqiāng + shǒu = bùqiāngshǒu, jīqiāng + shǒu = jīqiāngshǒu, pào + shǒu = pàoshǒu, etc. to indicate the operator)

速度	sùdù	speed
巷战	xiàngzhàn	to engage in street fighting; street fighting (mil.)
掩护	yǎnhù	to cover (mil.); cover (mil.)
压制	yāzhì	to suppress
以外	yǐwài	beyond, outside, other than, except
优点	yōudiǎn	strong point, merit

STORY COMPREHENSION

最近党中央派了许多高级干部到先进国家去访问，主要的目的是看看他们的新武器、新装备。因为我们的访问跟国防有很大的关系，并且为了不让社会帝国主义国家干扰破坏，所以负责访问的干部回来以后，不许提那些被访问的国家的名字。我向各位同志报告的时候当然也不说我访问的是哪国。现在我就管那国叫甲国。

甲国离我们中国不太远，只有一千多公里，是一个社会主义国家。虽然他们的科技跟英国、美国比，还有很大的差距，可是在武器的研究发展这方面，有很多地方我们中国可以学习。

Zuìjìn Dǎngzhōngyāng pàile xǔduō gāojí gàn bù dào xiānjìn guójiā qù fǎngwèn, zhǔyàode mùdì shì kànkān tāmen de xīn wǔqì, xīn zhuāngbèi. Yīnwèi wǒmen de fǎngwèn gēn guófáng yǒu hěn dàde guānxi, bìngqiě wèile búràng shèhuìdìguózhǔyì guójiā gānrǎo pòhuài, suǒyǐ fùzé fǎngwèn de gàn bù huílai yǐhòu, bùxǔ tí nàxiē bèi fǎngwèn de guójiā de míngzi. Wǒ xiàng gèwèi tóngzhì bàogào de shíhou dāngrán yě bùshuō wǒ fǎngwèn de shì něiguó. Xiànzài wǒ jiù guǎn něiguó jiào Jiǎguó.

Jiǎguó lí wǒmen Zhōngguó bú tài yuǎn, zhǐ yǒu yīqiānduōgōnglǐ, shì yíge shèhuìzhǔyì guójiā. Suǐrán tāmen de kējì gēn Yīngguó, Měiguó bǐ, hái yǒu hěn dàde chājù, kěshì zài wǔqì de yánjiū fāzhǎn zhèfāngmian, yǒu hěn duō dìfang wǒmen Zhōngguó kěyǐ xuéxí.

我访问的第一天，由一个甲国的高级指挥员陪着去参观他们的边防部队，他们的边防部队差不多都是民兵，但是用的武器跟正规军的一样。唯一不同的地方就是边防部队平常没有重武器，只有到了作战的时候才由正规军的部队给他们重武器。

我先说他们的步枪。他们的步枪都是自动步枪；半自动步枪都用来训练新战士了。那位指挥员跟我说，他们的自动步枪都是自己制造的，性能很好。连续发射的时候每分钟可以发射一百二十发。各位同志想想，我们中国制造的自动步枪每分钟最多只能发射一百发。并且部件太多，不容易保养。甲国的自动步枪比中国的轻，也比较短，对那些身体不太高的步枪手很方便。

Wǒ fǎngwèn de dìyītiān, yóu yíge Jiǎguóde gāojí zhǐhuīyuán péizhe qù cānguān tāmen de biānfáng bùduì, tāmen de biānfáng bùduì chābùduō dōu shì mínbīng, dànshi yòngde wǔqì gēn zhèngguījūnde yíyàng. Wéiyī bùtóngde dìfang jiùshì biānfáng bùduì píngcháng méiyǒu zhòng wǔqì, zhǐyǒu dàole zuòzhàn de shíhou cái yóu zhèngguījūn de bùduì gěi tāmen zhòng wǔqì.

Wǒ xiān shuō tāmen de bùqiāng. Tāmen de bùqiāng dōu shì zìdòng bùqiāng; bànzìdòng bùqiāng dōu yòng lái xùnliàn xīn zhànshì le. Nàwèi zhǐhuīyuán gēn wǒ shuō, tāmen de zìdòng bùqiāng dōu shì zìjǐ zhìzào de, xìngnéng hěn hǎo. Liánxù fāshè de shíhou měifēnzhōng kěyǐ fāshè yībǎièrshífā. Gèwèi tóngzhì xiǎngxiǎng, wǒmen Zhōngguó zhìzào de zìdòng bùqiāng měifēnzhōng zuìduō zhǐnéng fāshè yībǎifā. Bìngqiě bùjiàn tài duō, bùróngyì bǎoyǎng. Jiǎguóde zìdòng bùqiāng bǐ Zhōngguóde qīng, yě bǐjiào duǎn, duì nàxiē shēntǐ bú tài gāo de bùqiāngshǒu hěn fāngbiàn.

大家都知道冲锋枪的构造比较简单，火力很猛，是冲锋、伏击，巷战时候用的武器。甲国冲锋枪的优点是非常轻，只有三公斤重，比我们的要轻一公斤多。缺点也有，就是火力不够猛，如果目标在一百公尺以外就不容易打中。我认为他们的冲锋枪没有咱们中国的好。陪我参观的那位甲国指挥员也认为我的看法对。

我也看了他们的轻机枪和重机枪。他们的轻机枪跟我们的差不多，每分钟可以发射六十发子弹，大约有十公斤重，必要的时候机枪手可以用两只手端着发射。重机枪比我们中国的轻，最重的也只有三十多公斤，可以在三千五百公尺以内杀伤敌人。咱们中国的重机枪，最轻的都有四十多公斤重，并且打不中一千五百公尺以外的目标。不过他们的重机枪

Dàjiā dōu zhīdao chōngfēngqiāng de gòuzào bǐjiào jiǎndān, huǒlì hěn měng, shì chōngfēng, fújī, xiàngzhàn shíhou yòngde wǔqì. Jiǎguó chōngfēngqiāng de yōudiǎn shì fēicháng qīng, zhǐ yǒu sāngōngjīn zhòng, bǐ wǒmende yào qīng yìgōngjīnduō. Quēdiǎn yě yǒu, jiùshi huǒlì búgòu měng, rúguǒ mùbiāo zài yìbǎigōngchǐ yīwài jiù bùróngyì dǎ zhòng. Wǒ rènwéi tāmen de chōngfēngqiāng méiyǒu zánmen Zhōngguóde hǎo. Péi wǒ cānguān de nàwèi Jiǎguó zhǐhuīyuán yě rènwéi wǒde kànfǎ duì.

Wǒ yě kànle tāmen de qīng jīqiāng hé zhòng jīqiāng. Tāmen de qīng jīqiāng gēn wǒmende chàbùduō, měi fēnzhōng kěyǐ fāshè liùshífā zǐdàn, dàyuē yǒu shígōngjīn zhòng, bìyàode shíhou jīqiāngshǒu kěyǐ yòng liǎngzhǐ shǒu duānzhe fāshè. Zhòng jīqiāng bǐ wǒmen Zhōngguóde qīng, zuìzhòngde yě zhǐ yǒu sānshíduōgōngjīn, kěyǐ zài sānqiānwǔbǎigōngchǐ yǐnèi shāshāng dírén. Zánmen Zhōngguóde zhòng jīqiāng, zuìqīngde dōu yǒu sìshíduōgōngjīn zhòng, bìngqiě dǎ búzhòng

有两个缺点，第一，每分钟只能发射二百到二百五十发，比我们中国的重机枪发射的少，第二，进行连续发射以后，很容易发生故障，所以得点射。

我把甲国的自动步枪、半自动步枪、冲锋枪、轻机枪、重机枪的性能、优点和缺点都向各位同志报告了。各位同志也许会问我“你向党中央提出了些什么建议呢？”我向党中央建议了好几件事。现在随便说两、三件。第一、我们在制造自动步枪这方面应该跟甲国合作，请甲国派人来帮助我们改良自动步枪。第二、甲国的冲锋枪虽然没有我们中国的好，可是比我们中国的便宜多了。我认为我们训练普通民兵的时候，可以让他们用甲国制造的冲锋枪。基干民兵和武装民兵的单

yìqiānwūbǎigōngchǐ yīwàide mùbiāo。
Búguò tāmen de zhòng jīqiāng yǒu
liǎngge quēdiǎn, dìyī, měifēnzhōng
zhǐ néng fāshè èrbǎi dào èrbǎiwūshífā,
bǐ wǒmen Zhōngguóde zhòng jīqiāng
fāshède shǎo, dìèr, jìnxíng liánxù
fāshè yǐhòu, hěn róngyì fāshēng
gùzhàng, suǒyǐ děi diǎnshè。

Wǒ bǎ Jiǎguóde zìdòng bùqiāng,
bàn zìdòng bùqiāng, chōngfēngqiāng,
qīng jīqiāng, zhòng jīqiāng de xìng-
néng, yōudiǎn hé quēdiǎn dōu xiàng
gèwèi tóngzhì bàogào le. Gèwèi tóng-
zhì yěxǔ huì wèn wǒ "Nǐ xiàng Dǎng-
zhōngyāng tíchū le xiē shénme jiànyì
ne?" Wǒ xiàng Dǎngzhōngyāng jiànyì le
hǎojǐjiàn shì. Xiànzài suíbiàn shuō
liǎng, sānjiàn. Dìyī, wǒmen zài
zhìzào zìdòng bùqiāng zhè fāngmian
yīnggāi gēn Jiǎguó hézuò, qǐng Jiǎguó
pài rén lái bāngzhù wǒmen gǎiliáng
zìdòng bùqiāng. Dìèr, Jiǎguóde
chōngfēngqiāng suǐrán méiyǒu wǒmen
Zhōngguóde hǎo, kěshì bǐ wǒmen Zhōng-
guóde piányìduō le. Wǒ rènwéi wǒmen
xùnliàn pǔtōng mínbīng de shíhou,
kěyǐ ràng tāmen yòng Jiǎguó zhìzào de

位可以用中国制造的冲锋枪。第三、我们的边防部队的任务是防御社会帝国主义侵略者进攻我们，并且也要打击侵略者。如果有一天，真打起仗来，我们需要很多的轻机枪和重机枪掩护我们的部队，压制敌人的火力。目前边防部队用的机枪大部分都太旧了，制造新的恐怕来不及。我认为可以一方面先向甲国买他们的机枪，一方面自己快一点儿生产这些武器。

chōngfēngqiāng. Jīgān mínbīng hé
wǔzhuāng mínbīng de dānwèi kěyǐ yòng
Zhōngguó zhìzàode chōngfēngqiāng.
Dìsān, wǒmende biānfáng bùduì de
rènwù shì fángyù shèhuìdìguózhǔyì
qīnlüèzhě jìngōng wǒmen, bìngqiě yě
yào dǎjī qīnlüèzhě. Rúguǒ yǒu yìtiān,
zhēn dǎqǐzhànglai, wǒmen xūyào hěn
duōde qīng jīqiāng hé zhòng jīqiāng
yǎnhù wǒmende bùduì, yāzhì dírénde
huǒlì. Mùqián biānfáng bùduì yòngde
jīqiāng dàbùfen dōu tàijiùle, zhìzào
xīnde kǒngpà láibùjí. Wǒ rènwéi kěyǐ
yīfāngmian xiān xiàng Jiǎguó mǎi
tāmende jīqiāng, yīfāngmian zìjǐ
kuàiyìdiǎnr shēngchǎn zhèxiē wǔqì.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS

for

STORY COMPREHENSION

1. Why were the cadres forbidden from revealing the true identities of the foreign nations they had visited?
2. How far is country Jia from China?
3. How do Jia's science and technology compare with those of Great Britain and the United States?
4. On the first day, who accompanied the speaker to visit the border defense troops?
5. During peacetime, what is the only difference between the weapons used by the border defense troops and those used by the Regular Army?

6. a. What rifles are used by the border defense troops?

b. What rifles are used for training new servicemen?
7. How many rounds of ammunition (rate of fire) can their automatic rifle fire per minute?
8. According to the speaker, how many rounds of ammunition can a Chinese-made automatic rifle fire per minute?
9. For what sort of people are the Jia-made automatic rifles more suitable?
10. The speaker cited three situations in which submachine guns are used.
Name these three situations.
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)
11. a. What is the weight of the Jia-made submachine gun?

b. How does it compare with the Chinese-made submachine gun in terms of weight?

12. Describe the drawbacks of the Jia-made submachine gun in detail.

13. a. How many rounds of ammunition (rate of fire) can the Jia-made light machine gun fire?

b. What is its weight?

14. a. Give the weight of the heaviest Jia-made heavy machine gun.

b. Give the range in which a Jia-made heavy machine gun can inflict casualties.

15. Give the weight of the lightest Chinese-made heavy machine gun.

16. Describe the first drawback of a Jia-made heavy machine gun.

17. Describe the second drawback of a Jia-made heavy machine gun.

18. To whom did the speaker submit his suggestions?

19. According to the speaker, in what aspect should the Chinese seek cooperation from Jia?

20. According to the speaker's suggestion, who will use Jia-made submachine guns?

21. Who will use the Chinese-made submachine guns (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

22. What is the mission of the border defense troops (be specific)?

23. According to the speaker, in time of war what is the purpose of having a large quantity of light and heavy machine guns (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

24. What is the condition of the border defense troops' machine guns at present?

25. What is the speaker's twofold suggestion regarding machine guns?
 - (1)
 - (2)

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. Why were the cadres forbidden from revealing the true identities of the foreign nations they had visited?

([The visit is closely] related to national defense)

AND/OR (Must not be interfered with and destroyed [by the social-imperialist nations])

2. How far is country Jia from China?

(More than 1,000 kilometers)

3. How do Jia's science and technology compare with those of Great Britain and the United States?

([Still] falls behind [Great Britain and the United States])

4. On the first day, who accompanied the speaker to visit the border defense troops?

(A high-ranking commander)

5. During peacetime, what is the only difference between the weapons used by the border defense troops and those used by the Regular Army?

([During peacetime], the border defense troops don't have heavy weapons)

6. a. What rifles are used by the border defense troops?

(Automatic rifles)

- b. What rifles are used for training new servicemen?

(Semiautomatic rifles)

7. How many rounds of ammunition (rate of fire) can their automatic rifle fire per minute?

(120 rounds)

8. According to the speaker, how many rounds of ammunition can a Chinese-made automatic rifle fire per minute?
(100 rounds)
9. For what sort of people are the Jia-made automatic rifles more suitable?
(Short people)
10. The speaker cited three situations in which submachine guns are used. Name these three situations.
(1) (Charge)
(2) (Ambush)
(3) (Street fighting)
11. a. What is the weight of the Jia-made submachine gun?
(3 kilograms)
- b. How does it compare with the Chinese-made submachine gun in terms of weight?
([It is] lighter [than Chinese-made submachine gun] by more than one kilogram)
12. Describe the drawbacks of the Jia-made submachine gun in detail.
(The firepower is not heavy enough and it's not easy to hit the target beyond 100 meters)
13. a. How many rounds of ammunition (rate of fire) can the Jia-made light machine gun fire?
(60 rounds)
- b. What is its weight?
(About 10 kilograms)
14. a. Give the weight of the heaviest Jia-made heavy machine gun.
(More than 30 kilograms)

- b. Give the range in which a Jia-made heavy machine gun can inflict casualties.
([Can inflict casualties within] 3,500 meters)
15. Give the weight of the lightest Chinese-made heavy machine gun.
(More than 40 kilograms)
16. Describe the first drawback of a Jia-made heavy machine gun.
([It can only] fire 200-250 rounds per minute)
17. Describe the second drawback of a Jia-made heavy machine gun.
(After continuous firing, [it is very easy to] develop malfunction)
18. To whom did the speaker submit his suggestions?
(The Party Central Committee)
19. According to the speaker, in what aspect should the Chinese seek cooperation from Jia?
(In manufacturing automatic rifles)
20. According to the speaker's suggestion, who will use Jia-made submachine guns?
(The regular militia)
21. Who will use the Chinese-made submachine guns (2)?
(1) (The primary militia)
(2) (The armed militia)
22. What is the mission of the border defense troops (be specific)?
(To defend against the attack of socialist-imperialism aggressor)

23. According to the speaker, in time of war what is the purpose of having a large quantity of light and heavy machine guns (2)?

(1) (Cover our troops)

(2) (Suppress the firepower of the enemy)

24. What is the condition of the border defense troops' machine guns at present?

([Most of them are] too old)

25. What is the speaker's twofold suggestion regarding machine guns?

(1) (Buy machine guns from Jia)

(2) (expedite the production [of these weapons])

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 什么是半自动步枪和自动步枪？这两种武器的发射速度跟火力有什么不一样？

Shénme shì bànzìdòng bùqiāng hé zìdòng bùqiāng? Zhè liǎngzhǒng wǔqì de fāshè sùdù gēn huǒlì yǒu shénme bù-yí-yàng?

2. 在什么情况下跟敌人会发生巷战？巷战的时候用什么武器最有效？

Zài shénme qíngkuàng xià gēn dírén huì fāshēng xiàngzhàn? Xiàngzhàn de shíhou yòng shénme wǔqì zuì yǒuxiào?

3. 重机枪的有效发射距离是多少米？为什么重机枪的火力比轻机枪大？

Zhòng jīqiāng de yǒuxiào fāshè jùlí shì duōshǎo mǐ? Wèi shénme zhòng jīqiāng de huǒlì bǐ qīng jīqiāng dà?

4. 重机枪在作战的时候火力猛、速度快、可是它有没有缺点？为什么？

Zhòng jīqiāng zài zuòzhàn de shíhou huǒlì měng, sùdù kuài, kěshi tā yǒu méiyǒu quēdiǎn? Wèishénme?

5. 解放军的武器除了步枪以外，还有些什么武器？在什么情况下用这些武器？

Jiěfàngjūn de wǔqì chúle bùqiāng yǐwài, hái yǒuxiē shénme wǔqì? Zài shénme qíngkuàng xià yòng zhèxiē wǔqì?

6. 伏击也是战术的一种吗？什么时候用伏击战术？

Fújī yěshì zhànshù de yìzhǒng ma? Shénme shíhou yòng fújī zhànshù?

7. 请你说一说在什么情况下步枪可以射击飞机，什么时候用枪上的刺刀刺杀敌人？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zài shénme qíngkuàng xià bùqiāng kěyǐ shèjī fēijī, shénme shíhou yòng qiāngshàngde cìdāo cìshā dírén?

8. 请你说一说高射炮、冲锋枪、重机枪、骑枪这几种武器在进攻敌人的时候有什么用？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō gāoshèpào, chōngfēngqiāng, zhòng jīqiāng, qíqiāng, zhèjǐzhǒng wǔqì zài jìngōng dírén de shíhou yǒu shénme yòng?

9. 为什么步枪比其他的武器容易操作跟保养？

Wèishénme bùqiāng bǐ qítāde wǔqì róngyì cāozuò gēn bǎoyǎng?

10. 冲锋枪每分钟大约可以发射多少发子弹？为什么冲锋枪是跟敌人巷战时的有效武器？

Chōngfēngqiāng měi fēnzhōng dàyuē kěyǐ fāshè duōshǎo fā zǐdàn?

Wèishénme chōngfēngqiāng shì gēn dírén xiàngzhànshí de yǒuxiào wǔqì?

11. 请你说一说重机枪怎么掩护部队进攻敌人？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zhòng jīqiāng zěnmē yǎnhù bùduì jìngōng dírén?

12. 中国现在还得买外国的战斗机、坦克什么的，可是早就不买自动步枪、重机枪了，为什么？

Zhōngguó xiànzài hái dèi mǎi wàiguóde zhàndòujī, tǎnkè shénmede, kěshì zǎojiù bùmǎi zìdòng bùqiāng, zhòng jīqiāng le, wèishénme?

13. 重机枪在作战的时候得有几个战士才能操作？各人的任务是什么？

Zhòng jīqiāng zài zuòzhàn de shíhou děi yǒu jǐge zhànshì cái néng cāozuò? Gèrén de rènwù shì shénme?

14. 听说1960年以前，解放军的自动步枪不够用、性能也不够好，现在呢？为什么？

Tīngshuō Yījiǔliùlíngnián yǐqián, Jiěfàngjūn de zìdòng bùqiāng búgòu yòng, xìngnéng yě búgòu hǎo, xiànzài ne? Wèishénme?

15. 中国部队的指战员也跟战士一样需要学习保养武器跟排除武器的故障吗？为什么？

Zhōngguó bùduì de zhǐzhànyuán yě gēn zhànshì yíyàng xūyào xuéxí bǎoyǎng wǔqì gēn páichú wǔqì de gùzhāng ma? Wèishénme?

16. 战士受入伍训练的时候，为什么一定先要操练步枪的射击技术才操练其他的武器？

Zhànshì shòu rùwǔ xùnliàn de shíhou, wèishénme yíding xiānyào cāoliàn bùqiāng de shèjī jìshù cái cāoliàn qítāde wǔqì?

17. 步枪射击以前包括几个动作？每个动作的目的是什么？

Bùqiāng shèjī yǐqián bāokuò jǐge dòngzuò? Měige dòngzuò de mùdì shì shénme?

18. 冲锋的时候用重机枪吗？最有用的武器是什么？为什么？

Chōngfēng de shíhou yòng zhòng jīqiāng ma? Zuì yǒuyòngde wǔqì shì shénme? Wèishénme?

19. 要是敌人很多，从很远的距离向我们进攻，我们用什
么武器射击他们，为什么？

Yàoshi dírén hěnduō, cóng hěnyuǎnde jùlí xiàng wǒmen jìngōng, wǒmen
yòng shénme wǔqì shèjī tāmen, wèishénme?

20. 在实弹射击以前，战士需要操练步枪的端枪、扣扳机
和瞄准技术吗？

Zài shídàn shèjī yǐqián, zhànshì xūyào cāoliàn bùqiāng de duānqiāng,
kòu bānjī hé miáozhǔn jìshù ma?

21. 自动步枪的构造比步枪复杂，它的射击性能比步枪好
吗？为什么？

Zìdòng bùqiāng de gòuzào bǐ bùqiāng fùzá, tāde shèjī xìngnéng bǐ
bùqiāng hǎo ma? Wèishénme?

22. 听说四人帮破坏了武器的生产，为什么步枪的生产还
超过了解放军的需要？

Tīngshuō Sìrén Bāng pòhuài le wǔqì de shēngchǎn, wèishénme bùqiāng de
shēngchǎn hái chāoguò le Jiěfàngjūn de xūyào?

23. 请你说一说中国边防部队用什么基本武器？有哪些重
武器装备？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Zhōngguó biānfáng bùduì yòng shénme jīběn wǔqì?
Yǒu nǎxiē zhòng wǔqì zhuāngbèi?

24. 负责搜集军事情报的战士也需要受步枪射击训练吗？
为什么？

Fùzé sōují jūnshì qíngbào de zhànshì yě xūyào shòu bùqiāng shèjī
xùnliàn ma? Wèishénme?

25. 敌人离你很近的时候，用手榴弹或是骑枪杀伤敌人很有效吗？为什么？

Dírén lí nǐ hěn jìn de shíhòu, yòng shǒuliúdàn huòshì qíqiāng shāshāng dí rén hěn yǒuxiào ma? Wèishénme?

26. 步枪在作战的时候，每射击一次得装填一次子弹，自动步枪呢？为什么？

Bùqiāng zài zuòzhàn de shíhòu, měi shèjī yí cì dēi zhuāngtián yí cì zǐdàn, zìdòng bùqiāng ne? Wèishénme?

27. 一般地说，每一种武器都有缺点，请你说一说步枪、手枪和重机枪的缺点？

Yìbānde shuō, měi yìzhǒng wǔqì dōu yǒu quēdiǎn, qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō bùqiāng, shǒuqiāng hé zhòng jīqiāng de quēdiǎn?

28. 中国海军的鱼雷艇上都有重机枪跟高射炮的装备吗？为什么？

Zhōngguó hǎijūn de yúléitǐng shàng dōu yǒu zhòng jīqiāng gēn gāoshèpào de zhuāngbèi ma? Wèishénme?

29. 请你说一说 1960 年以前中国正规军用的武器里头有哪些是向外国买的？

Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Yījiǔliùlíngnián yǐqián Zhōngguó zhèngguījūn yòngde wǔqì lǐtòu yǒu nǎxiē shì xiàng wàiguó mǎide?

30. 有很多武器中国早就会自己制造了。请你说一说是哪些武器？

Yǒu hěnduō wǔqì Zhōngguó zǎojiù huì zìjǐ zhìzào le. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō shì nǎxiē wǔqì?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. It seems that there are hundreds of pillboxes in the enemy's position. I think that using only tanks to attack them would be ineffective.

2. We must use fierce firepower and tanks to cover the attack. The firepower of the enemy pillboxes must be suppressed.

3. The tactics for attacking enemy pillboxes are very complex. The tactics often depend on whether or not there is a heavy machine gun, antitank gun, or recoilless inside the pillbox.

4. Normally, pillboxes have either machine guns or cannons inside them, but sometimes they have no special weapons. In that case, the troops inside the pillbox use carbines, submachine guns, and guns.

5. Although firepower is very important during combat, tactics are (most) more important. In order to effectively use machine guns, artillery pieces, and recoilless rifles, etc., you must master special tactics.

6. The firepower of a semiautomatic rifle is strong, but the mechanism is too complicated and it has many drawbacks; however, there are more strong points than weak points.
7. When driving at night, our tanks must keep a distance of 20 meters and must travel at a slow speed. If their speed exceeds 30 miles per hour, they might have an accident.
8. With respect to targets within 100 meters, a submachine gun is very effective. This is because its firepower is very great and it can fire continuously. Its speed of fire exceeds 100 rounds per minute.
9. When firing a submachine gun, you must pay attention to hold it carefully (with both hands).
10. When driving the tank, his speed was too fast; as a result the tank's engine developed a malfunction, and they had no parts to fix it with.
11. Modern tanks have only two drawbacks. They are very easy to ambush, and are also very complicated in their construction.
12. When you attack the enemy bunker, I will cover you and I will use this heavy machine gun to suppress the enemy's firepower.

13. Before the troops tanks could assault the enemy positions, they ambushed our forces. Many of the Liberation Army soldiers were killed or wounded.

14. According to modern tactics, when attacking an enemy position, you should have a covering unit and an attacking unit. The attacking unit must pay attention to the speed of the attack; the covering unit must pay attention to suppressing the enemy's firepower.

15. With respect to street fighting, using tanks to ambush the enemy's troops is a really effective tactic. If you have no tanks, then you must use hand grenades and machine guns.

16. If the distance is too great, even a heavy machine gun is not effective against enemy troops. We must request that the "organization" send us a few recoilless rifles and some artillery pieces.

17. This weapon is very effective and can be easily aimed, but it has one big drawback, it cannot fire continuously and can fire only three rounds per minute.

18. If the speed of assault is too slow, our covering firepower must be very fierce. If we use tanks, the speed of attack can be faster. But first we must discover which of the enemy pillboxes have antitank guns.

19. When engaged in street fighting, the most effective weapons are sub-machine guns, carbines, and hand grenades. Using hand grenades to suppress enemy fire is very effective.

20. Having a beard makes you look very fierce. When you join the military, do you have to shave your beard?

21. That depends on which branch of service you join. If you join the Army, you must shave every day. But if you join the militia, you don't have to shave off your beard.

22. During the war, our units often engaged in street fighting; the fighting was usually severe and many soldiers were killed or wounded. Most of them were killed by enemy hand grenades.

23. Because there are many narrow alleys and streets in Beijing, street fighting there is very effective. It is very easy to ambush enemy troops and tanks.

24. If you want to destroy a tank, you should use antitank guns, hand grenades, or high explosives (bombs). Rifles, carbines, and heavy machine guns are all ineffective.

25. We repeatedly attacked the enemy pillbox, but their firepower was too fierce; we also had no covering fire, so we suffered many dead and wounded.

26. The gap between the modernization of the Russian Army and China's Liberation Army is very great. From 1945 on, the Chinese have fallen behind in tank production.

27. The Central Committee has emphasized the development and production of new fighter aircraft. It isn't that aircraft production has lagged behind, but rather the enemy's air-to-air missile development has developed too quickly.

28. Air-to-air missiles are not effective against tanks, but fighter aircraft are because they can use machine guns and high explosives to destroy the enemy tanks.

29. In amphibious warfare, fierce firepower is very important; we cannot make a surprise attack because the enemy's radar is too effective. Therefore, we must first use our firepower to destroy the enemy radar positions.

30. For the sake of maintaining our position, we must repair the emplacements and fortifications. Otherwise, the enemy will possibly attack and blow up our tanks and our materials and equipment and kill all of our gunners.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Kǎbīnqiāng suīrán shì jīn jùlǐ shǐyòngde wǔqì, kěshì zài liánxù fāshède shíhou huǒlì yě hěn qiáng. Rúguǒ měi yīfā zǐdàn dōu méiyǒu làngfèi, tā kěyǐ bǎ yībǎi gōngchǐ yǐnèi de dírén dōu dǎsǐ.

2. Zài chéngshì dǎ xiàngzhàn gēn zài xiāngxià dǎ yǒujǐzhàn yíyàng hěn zhuózhòng sùdù. Suǒyǐ zài shòu xiàngzhàn xùnliàn de shíqī, gānbù yào xuéyuán měitiān duānqiāng pǎobù shíwǔgōnglǐ, cǐwài, hái yào liánxí lìyòng dīwù lái yǐnbì zìjǐ.

3. Yījiūsìjiūnián xīn Zhōngguó chénglì yǐhòu, Dǎngzhōngyāng juéde hěnduō gānbù zhǐhuì dǎ yǒujǐzhàn, méiyǒu shòuguó zhèngguǐjūn zuòzhàn de xùnliàn. Yúshì jiù tōngzhǐ tāmen xuéxí xīn wǔqì gēn lǐngdǎo fāngfǎ de xùnliàn.

4. Wáng Déshèng dǎzhàngde shíhou hěn měng, chángcháng wàngle yǐnbì zùjǐ. Bǐfāngshuō, shàngge yuè wǒmen bùduì gēn dírén xiàngzhàn, tā yíge rén duānzhe chōngfēngqiāng dǎsǐle shíjǐge dírén, zìjǐ yě shòule shāng, liǎngtiáo tuǐ dōu dǎhuàile.

5. Qíngbào rényuán de mìmì bàogào shuō xiànzài shèhuìdìguózhǔyì zhèngzài zhìzào yìzhǒng zhòngxíng tǎnkè, sùdù gēn huǒlì dōu bǐ wǒmende tǎnkè dà liǎngbèi, wǒmen yīnggāi kuàiyidiǎnr xiān yánjiùchū yìzhǒng huǒlì qiáng de fǎntǎnkèpào cái néng fāngyù tāmende jìngōng.

6. Zhāng Yòufēi shì Zhōngguó Kōngjūn Fēixíng Xuéxiào de xuésheng. Tāde fēixíng jìshù búcuò, zhǐshì měicì jiàngluò de shíhou búshì tài zǎo jiùshì tài wǎn hěn róngyì fāshēng wēixiǎn. Gānbù gàosu tā, yídìng děi bǎ jiàngluò de jìshù zhǎngwò hǎo, yàoburán bùnéng bìyè.

7. Dírén de gōngshìlǐ yǒu liǎngtǐng jìqiāng, wǒmen měi yí cì fādòng gōngjī dōu bèi tāmen dǎsīle bùshǎo rén. Zhècì wǒ dàizhe liǎngge zhànshì, kuài sùdù de pǎobù dào dírén de gōngshì hòubianr, yòng chōngfēngqiāng dǎsīle nà liǎngge jìqiāngshǒu.

8. Xīngqīyī yìzǎoshang gānbù fāgěi wǒmen yìrén yìzhī xīn bùqiāng, bǎ jiùde shōuhuìqu tā shuō, "xīn bùqiāng de yōudiǎn shì shèjì yìfā zìdàn yǐhòu, dièrfā huì zìdòng zhuāngtián. Nǐmen shídàn shèjì yìqián xiān yào xíguàn zhèzhǒng bùqiāng de yòngfǎ.

9. Gǎizào dìzhǔ hé fǎngémìngfènzǐ xūyào hěnjiǔde shíjiān; xiān yào ràng tāmen liǎojiě Mǎliè zhǔyì hé Máo Zhǔxí de zhùzuò hé Gòngchǎndǎng duì Zhōngguóde gòngxiàn. Cǐwài, tāmen hái yào dào xiāngxià qù cānjiā láodòng cái zhīdao láodòng rénmín de xīnkǔ.

10. Yìbānláishuō, xùnlìàn zhōngxīn de fùzérén zài tiāoxuǎn léidá xùnlìàn de zhànshì, tèbié zhuózhòng tāde chéngfèn, yuányīn shì léidá gōngzuò hé qíngbào hěn yǒuguānxi, chéngfèn bùhǎode rén kěnéng huì bèi dírén lìyòng.

11. Shàngge yuè sānshíhào dírén bùduì jīngōng wǒmende zhèndì. Tāmen yòng gèzhǒng huǒpào lái cuīhuǐ wǒmende gōngshì, shāshāngle hěnduō tóngzhì, zhèngzài wēixiǎnde shíhòu, wǒmende fēijī lái hōngzhà, cái yāzhìzhù dírènde gōngjī.

12. Zhāng Zàifā shì wǒmen dānwèide bùqiāngshǒu. Tāde shèjì zhǔnde bùdéliǎo, bùduì hěn xūyào tā bāngzhù gānbù xùnlìàn rùwǔde zhànshì, suǒyì ràng tā chāoqǐ fú xiànyì.

13. Dǎngzhōngyāng pàilaide gānbù duì kējì fùzérén shuō, "shíxiàn sìge xiàndàihuà de zhòngdiǎn shì zhuā guófáng wǔqìde shéngchǎn, shǒuxiān yīnggāi bǎ guófáng gōngyè gǎoshàngqu, yíding yào zài èrshínián yǐnèi bǎ Zhōngguó Jiěfàngjūn de zhuāngbèi gǎnshàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng."

14. Dírén xiàng wǒmen fādòngde dìyíci jīngōng bèi wǒmende kōngjūn zhàndòuji hé bùduìde huǒpào yāzhì xiàqu yǐhòu, gānbù duì zhànshìmen shuō, "zài dírén fādòng dìèrcì gōngjī yǐqián nǐmen kuài yidiǎnr gòuzhù gèrénde sànbīngkēng."
15. Zhōngguó yóujīduì gēn Rìběn dìguózhūyì qīnlüèzhě dǎzhàng de shíhou, zuì xǐhuan zài yèli yòng fújī zhànshù. Měi yíci fújī yǐhòu, yóujīduì chūle xiāomiè dírén yǐwài, yě dédào le hěnduō wūqì dānyào shénmede.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate," because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 2

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Lǐ Jiànguó is discussing small arms used by the PLA with Col. Dunham, an instructor of small arms at the U.S. Military Academy.

1. D: What kind of small arms are used by the People's Liberation Army?

L: 人民解放军使用的小型武器主要是手枪、步枪跟机枪什么的。

Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn shǐyòng de xiǎoxíng wǔqì zhǔyào shì shǒuqiāng, bùqiāng gēn jīqiāng shénmede.

2. D: What is the basic weapon that is used?

L: 基本武器有步枪和机枪两种，有自动的，也有半自动的。

Jīběn wǔqì yǒu bùqiāng hé jīqiāng liǎngzhǒng, yǒu zìdòngde, yě yǒu bànzìdòngde.

3. D: What kind of machine guns do you have?

L: 机枪我们也有两种，就是轻机枪和重机枪。

Jīqiāng wǒmen yě yǒu liǎngzhǒng, jiùshì qīngjīqiāng hé zhòngjīqiāng.

4. D: When are the rifle and the carbine used most effectively?

L: 战士们演习或是打仗的时候用五六型的卡宾枪。这种枪虽然是仿照苏联造的卡宾枪制造的，但是性能还不错。使用的时候每分钟可以发射三十五到四十发子弹，并且能够有效地打中四百米以内的目标。

Zhànshìmen yǎnxí huòshì dǎzhàng de shíhòu yòng wǔliùxíng de kābīnqiāng. Zhèzhǒng qiāng suīrán shì fǎngzhào Sūlián zàode kābīnqiāng zhìzào de, dànshì xìngnéng hái búcuò. Shǐyòng de shíhòu měi fēnzōng kěyǐ fāshè sānshiwǔ dào sìshífā zìdàn, bìngqiě nénggòu yǒuxiàode dǎzhòng sìbǎimǐ yǐnèi de mùbiāo.

5. D: I see. How about the rifle?

L: 目前战士们使用的五六型步枪有自动的和半自动的两种，自动步枪每分钟可以发射一百发子弹，半自动的可以发射四十发。此外，这种步枪可以连续发射三十发子弹以后才需要装填新子弹。有效射击距离也是四百米。

Mùqián zhànshìmen shǐyòng de wǔliùxíng bùqiāng yǒu zìdòngde hé bànzìdòngde liǎngzhǒng, zìdòng bùqiāng měifēnzhōng kěyǐ fāshè yībǎifā zìdàn, bànzìdòngde kěyǐ fāshè sìshífā. Cíwài, zhèzhǒng bùqiāng kěyǐ liánxù fāshè sānshífā zìdàn yǐhòu cái xūyào zhuāngtián xīn zìdàn. Yǒuxiào shèjǐ jùlǐ yě shì sìbǎimǐ.

6. D: So the most effective use of these weapons would be to use them against an enemy who is few in number and not more than 400 meters away. Is that right?

L: 对了。不过，在跟敌人进行巷战的时候，我们用六四型的半自动步枪。因为这种轻武器的发射速度更快；每分钟可以射击七十到一百发左右。这样的发射速度跟火力最适合进行巷战或是伏击了。

Duìle. Búguò, zài gēn dírén jìnxíng xiàngzhàn de shíhòu, wǒmen yòng liùsìxíng de bànzìdòng bùqiāng. Yīnwèi zhèzhǒng qīngwǔqì de fāshè sùdù gèng kuài; měifēnzhōng kěyǐ shèjǐ qīshí dào yībǎifā zuǒyòu. Zhèyàngde fāshè sùdù gēn huǒlì zuì shìhé jìnxíng xiàngzhàn huòshì fújī le.

7. D: What type of weapon do you use when there are a lot of enemy troops far away?

L: 在敌人的数目多又很远的情况下，我们用轻机枪或是重机枪来攻击他们。我们现在有三种仿照苏联的轻机枪；象五六型半自动步枪，射击的时候能打死一公里以内的敌人，五六型自动步枪不但每分钟能射击一百五十发，而且可以连续射击一百发不需要装填子弹。另外一种五八型的轻机枪也是能在一公里以内打死敌人，并且发射子弹的速度更快；每分钟能发射二百五十发子弹。真是作战的时候非常有用的武器。

Zài dírén de shù mù duō yòu hěn yuǎn de qíngkuàngxià, wǒmen yòng qīngjīqiāng huòshì zhòngjīqiāng lái gōngjī tāmen. Wǒmen xiànzài yǒu sānzhǒng fǎngzhào Sūlián de qīngjīqiāng; xiàng wǔliùxíng bàn-zìdòng bùqiāng, shèjǐ de shíhòu néng dǎsǐ yìqiānmǐ yǐnèi de dírén, wǔliùxíng zìdòng bùqiāng búdàn měifēnzhōng néng shèjǐ yībǎiwǔshífā, èrqiē kěyǐ liánxù shèjǐ yībǎifā bùxūyào zhuāngtián zìdàn. Língwài

yìzhǒng wǔbāxíng de qīngjīqiāng yě shì néng zài yìqiānmǐ yǐnèi dǎsǐ dírén, bìngqiě fāshè zìdàn de sùdù gèng kuài; měifēnzhōng néng fāshè èrbǎiwūshífā zìdàn. Zhēnshi zuòzhàn de shíhou fēicháng yōuyòng de wǔqī.

8. D: What's the other type?

L: 另外还有六七型轻机枪。这种机枪也分成自动的跟半自动的两种。自动的一分钟能射击一百五十发，半自动的一分钟能射击五十发。两种机枪都可以打死八百米以内的敌人。

Lìngwài hái yǒu liùqīxíng qīngjīqiāng. Zhèzhǒng jīqiāng yě fēnchéng zìdòngde gēn bànzìdòngde liǎngzhǒng. Zìdòngde yīfēnzhōng néng shèjī yībǎiwūshífā, bànzìdòngde yīfēnzhōng néng shèjī wūshífā. Liǎngzhǒng jīqiāng dōu kěyǐ dǎsǐ bābǎimǐ yǐnèi de dírén.

9. D: It sounds like you have some very effective light machine guns. How about the heavy machine guns?

L: 重机枪我们也有两种，五三型跟五四型的。五三型重机枪每分钟发射二百五十到三百发子弹，有效射击距离是一千米，可以连续发射二百五十发不必装填子弹。五四型的重机枪就比五三型的慢一点儿。每分钟只能射击八十发左右。不过它的优点是有效射击距离更远，能打死一千五百米以内的敌人。而且，还可以射击飞行在一千米以下的敌人飞机。

Zhòngjīqiāng wǒmen yě yǒu liǎngzhǒng, wūsānxíng gēn wūsìxíng de. Wūsānxíng zhòngjīqiāng měifēnzhōng fāshè èrbǎiwūshí dào sānbǎifā zìdàn, yǒuxiào shèjī jùlí shì yìqiānmǐ, kěyǐ liánxù fāshè èrbǎiwūshífā búbì zhuāngtián zìdàn. Wūsìxíng de zhòngjīqiāng jiù bǐ wūsānxíng de màn yīdiǎnr. Měifēnzhōng zhǐnéng shèjī bāshífā zuōyòu. Búguò tāde yōudiǎn shì yǒuxiào shèjī jùlí gèng yuǎn, néng dǎsǐ yìqiānwūbǎimǐ yǐnèi de dírén. Èrqiě, hái kěyǐ shèjī fēixíng zài yìqiānmǐ yǐxià de dírén fēijī.

10. D: How much do your machine guns weigh?

L: 没装子弹以前，五三型的机枪重十三点五公斤，五四型的重三十四公斤。

Méi zhuāng zìdàn yǐqián, wūsānxíng de jīqiāng zhòng shí sāndiǎnwǔ gōngjīn, wūsìxíngde zhòng sānshísì gōngjīn.

11. D: How about the light machine guns?

L: 五六型轻机枪差不多有七公斤重。五八型的有十三公斤重。六七型的比较轻，只有五公斤重。

Wǔliùxíng qīngjīqiāng chàbùduō yǒu qīgōngjīn zhòng. Wǔbāxíngde yǒu shí sān gōngjīn zhòng. Liùqīxíngde bǐjiào qīng, zhǐyǒu wǔgōngjīn zhòng.

12. D: That's interesting. Well, I can see that it's getting late. Let's go eat something and we can talk about this some more tomorrow.

L: 好极了！我正饿着呢。咱们明天再接着谈吧。

Hǎojíle! Wǒ zhèng èzhe ne. Zánmen míngtiān zài jiēzhe tán ba.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Three military officers have met to discuss the upcoming attack on the enemy positions south of "Bali Cun."

Role 1: Major Lin is the assault force commander. The assault force will consist of three separate assault units: Assault Unit #1 will make the first attack on "Bali Cun," and will use only submachine guns, semiautomatic carbines, and hand grenades as they must have very strong firepower and may have to engage in street fighting. The second assault force (Assault Unit #2) will include only tanks, and will coordinate with Assault Unit #1. If Assault Unit #1 is stopped by the firepower of the enemy, then Assault Unit #2 will pass through their positions and lead the attack on the enemy positions. Assault Unit #3 will use only heavy machine guns and artillery to give covering fire to units 1 and 2.

Role 2: Major Chen is the coordination officer for the unit. He has arranged with the artillery units to provide additional covering fire for the assault units. Before the assault begins, the artillery units will use their firepower to destroy as many of the enemy fortifications as possible, and to harass the enemy defensive units. After the assault begins, firepower will be used to suppress the fire of the enemy machine guns and antitank guns, allowing the assault units to advance a little more quickly. The Air Force is willing to assign/send 30 fighters to help destroy the enemy fortifications and suppress the enemy firepower if required.

Role 3: Comrade Zhou is the Central Committee representative involved with the attack. Though Major Lin has been named as the Assault Commander, Zhou feels that he is ultimately in charge as a representative of the Central Committee. He is concerned that the plan of attack is too complex, and that all of the troops may not understand what they are supposed to do. He is further concerned that if too many troops are used for the attack, there will not be enough left to defend their position and the enemy could attack Zhou's position. Also, he feels that coordination between the attack units and artillery units is important--otherwise the assault forces could suffer losses from their own artillery fire. Use of Air Force fighters would probably result in fewer casualties, but they should not be used because of political considerations--the glory for the attack should belong to the Army alone.

Scenario 2

Situation: Three officials have met to discuss the types of weapons to be issued to patrol units and militia units along the Sino-Soviet border. A prime consideration will be the production capacity of local weapons manufacturing factories/plants.

Role 1: Major Tang is the commander of all patrol/reconnaissance units in the area. As he considers the patrols to be the backbone of the local border defense units, he feels that they should use only the newest and lightest weapons, with the strongest possible firepower. The patrols should be armed exclusively with the newest submachine guns and semiautomatic carbines, as his patrols have been ambushed by the Soviet aggressors several times in the past month, and in an ambush situation, the patrol's firepower must be stronger than the enemy's firepower. Even light machine guns are unsatisfactory for use by patrols, as they are both too heavy and their mechanisms are too complex.

Role 2: Comrade Gao is in charge of the militia units in the area. They actually need many more machine guns and antitank guns, but many problems have arisen concerning the training and operation of such complex weapons. So Gao actually wants submachine guns and light machine guns to eliminate their training problems and still provide the firepower necessary to defend the communes in the area. They received 500 of the older submachine guns from the patrol units last week, but have found them to be unsatisfactory as their range is extremely short and the firing mechanisms often malfunction.

Role 3: Comrade Li is in charge of weapons production and issue to both the militia and reconnaissance units. At present, 50 percent of the new submachine guns produced have been sent to the patrol units, and 50 percent have been sent to the militia units. The entire production of semiautomatic carbines have been sent to the Regular Army units around Beijing, and therefore are not available for the militia or patrol units. Within three months, the production of semiautomatic weapons could be increased to allow sending some to the militia or reconnaissance units, but then they could not produce as many submachine guns. The only other solution would be to construct a new factory, which would require permission from the Central Committee, and could not begin operation for 6 months following the completion of construction.

Scenario 3

Situation: A new weapon is being adopted by the PRC Army as its basic weapon. Having been tested for 6 months, only two weapons remain in contention. One is a submachine gun and the other a semiautomatic carbine.

Role 1: Comrade Zhou is the representative of the Central Committee tasked with selecting the new weapon. The characteristics of both weapons need to be explored with regard to firepower, weight, accuracy, simplicity of construction, etc.

Role 2: Comrade Cao is the representative of the factory producing the submachine gun. He has been presented with the following information in order to sell the weapon to the Central Committee representative. Advantages of the submachine gun:

1. Rate of fire extremely fast (100 rnds/min)
2. Extreme firepower useful for street fighting, ambush situations, suppressing enemy fire at short ranges, etc.
3. Very light weight
4. Very reliable
5. Operates at both fixed (burst) fire and continuous fire

Disadvantages of the carbine:

1. Heavier than the submachine gun
2. Rate of fire slower than submachine gun
3. Carbine often develops malfunctions
4. Construction more complex than currently used rifle
5. Carbine is more expensive to produce/manufacture

Role 3: Comrade Huang represents the factory manufacturing the carbines. He has been presented with the following data in order to sell the carbine to the Central Committee representative:

Advantages of the carbine:

1. Very accurate up to 350 meters
2. Rate of fire higher than the currently used rifle
3. Lighter in weight than the currently used rifle
4. Operates at both fixed (burst) fire and semiautomatic
5. Also has bayonet
6. Very simple to clean (compared to submachine gun)

Disadvantages of the submachine gun:

1. Very complex construction
2. Effective only at short ranges
3. Wastes much ammunition
4. Requires excessive training time in order to fire accurately
5. Malfunctions, though not numerous, are serious when they occur, and cannot be eliminated by individual soldier

UNIT 3

DIALOGUE

1. A: 解放军陆军有几种火炮?
B: 可不少。我随便说几种吧。像反坦克炮、加农炮、迫击炮、自行火炮、榴弹炮、火箭筒, 等等的火炮我们都有。

2. A: 我没听说过加农炮这个名词。
B: 你知道榴弹炮的口径有多大吧? 加农炮的口径比榴弹炮的口径小一点(儿), 从一百二十毫米到一百三十毫米, 速度快、射程远, 可以用来打坦克, 摧毁各种工事。

3. A: 你刚才说的那些火炮都是炮兵用的吗?
B: 并不都是炮兵用的。比方说, 榴弹炮是炮兵用的, 迫击炮是步兵用的。

4. A: 我听说只有装甲部队才可以用坦克跟装甲运兵车。你们的坦克有几种。
B: 按重量分, 可以分成三种: 轻型、中型和重型。一般地说, 轻型的重量在二十吨以下, 中型的在四十吨以下, 重型的在四十吨以上。

5. A: 性能一定不一样吧？

B: 轻型坦克的装甲薄，可是速度快，可以担任侦察，等等的任务；中型的可以用来摧毁敌人的坦克或是有生力量；重型的装甲最厚，火力最强，不但可以摧毁坦克，也可以破坏工事。

6. A: 装甲运兵车也可以用来作战吗？

B: 可以。可是这种车的主要任务是运输战士，否则就不叫运兵车了。

1. A: Jiěfàngj n Lùjūn yǒu jǐzhǒng huǒpào?
How many kinds of artillery pieces does the PLA Army have?
- B: Kě bùshǎo. Wǒ suǐbiàn shuō jǐzhǒng ba. Xiàng fǎntǎn-kèpào, jiānóngpào, pǎijīpào, zìxíng huǒpào, liúdàn pào, huǒjiàntǒng, dēngdēngde huǒpào wǒmen dōu yǒu.
Quite a few indeed. Let me mention just a few off the top of my head. Heavy guns such as antitank guns, "jiānóngpào," mortars, self-propelled guns, howitzers, rocket launchers, etc. We have them all.
2. A: Wǒ méitīngshuōguo jiānóngpào zhèige míngcí.
I've never heard of the term "jiānóngpào."
- B: Nǐ zhīdao liúdàn pào de kǒujīng yǒu duō dà ba? Jiānóngpào de kǒujīng bǐ liúdàn pào de kǒujīng xiǎo yìdiǎn(r), cóng yìbǎièrshí háomǐ dào yìbǎisānshí háomǐ, sùdù kuài, shèchéng yuǎn, kěyǐ yònglai dǎ tǎnkē, cuīhuǐ gèzhǒng gōngshì.
You know how big the caliber of a howitzer is, I suppose. The caliber of a "jiānóngpào" is a little smaller than that of a howitzer, running from 120 to 130 millimeters. Its velocity is high and its range is far-reaching. You can use it to hit a tank and destroy all kinds of fortifications.
3. A: Nǐ gāngzái shuōde néixiē huǒpào dōu shì pàobīng yòngde ma?
Are those heavy guns you just mentioned all used by the artillery?
- B: Bīng bù dōu shì pàobīng yòngde. Bǐfāng shuō, liúdàn pào shì pàobīng yòngde, pǎijīpào shì bùbīng yòngde.
Not all of them. For example, howitzers are used by the artillery and mortars are used by the infantry.
4. A: Wǒ tīngshuō zhǐ yǒu zhuāngjiǎ bùduì cái kěyǐ yòng tǎnkē gēn zhuāngjiǎ yùnbīngchē. Nǐmende tǎnkē yǒu jǐzhǒng.
I heard that only the armored units can use tanks and armored personnel carriers. How many kinds of tanks do you have?
- B: Ān zhòngliàng fēn, kěyǐ fēnchéng sānzhǒng: qīng xíng, zhōng xíng hé zhòng xíng. Yìbānde shuō, qīng xíng de zhòngliàng zài èrshí dūn yǐxià, zhōng xíng de zài sìshí dūn yǐxià, zhòng xíng de zài sìshí dūn yǐshàng.
(If) you classify them by weight, (you) can divide them into three kinds: light, medium, and heavy. Generally speaking, the weight of a light one is under 20 tons, a medium one is under 40 tons, and a heavy one is over 40 tons.

5. A: Xìngnéng yí dìng bù yí yàng ba?

I suppose their characteristics must be different from one another?

B: Qīng xíng tǎnkè de zhuāngjiǎ báo, kěshì sùdù kuài, kéyì dānrèn zhēnchá, dēngdēngde rènwù; zhōng xíng de kéyì yònglái cuīhuǐ dírén de tǎnkè huòshì yǒushēnglìliang, zhōng xíng de zhuāngjiǎ zuì hòu, huǒlì zuì qiáng, búdàn kéyì cuīhuǐ tǎnkè, yě kéyì pòhuài gōngshì.

A light tank has light armor but high speed. It can undertake reconnaissance missions; etc. Medium tanks can be used for destroying enemy tanks or effective strength. A heavy tank has the heaviest armor and strongest firepower. It can destroy not only tanks, but fortifications as well.

6. A: Zhuāngjiǎ yùnbīngchē yě kéyì yònglái zuòzhàn ma?

Can an armored personnel carrier also be used for combat duty?

B: Kéyì. Kěshì zhèizhōng chē de zhǔyào rènwù shì yùnsū zhànshì, fǒuzé jiù bújiào yùnbīngchē le.

Yes, but its main mission is to transport troops; otherwise, it wouldn't be called a personnel carrier.

VOCABULARY

薄	báo	to be thin
步兵	bùbīng	infantry, infantryman
摧毁	cuihuǐ	to destroy, to smash
毫米	háomǐ	millimeter
厚	hòu	to be thick
火箭筒	huǒjiàntǒng	rocket launcher (C: zhǐ)
加农炮	jiānóngpào	"gun" (C: mén) (<u>Jiānóngpào</u> is a transliteration of the English word "cannon." It refers to an artillery piece with a caliber of 120-130 mm.)
口径	kǒujīng	caliber (mil.)
榴弹炮	liúdànào	howitzer (C: mén)
迫击炮	pǎijīpào	mortar (C: mén) (mil.)
炮兵	pàobīng	artillery (a branch of Army); artilleryman
强	qiáng	to be strong
射程	shèchéng	range (mil.) (the distance a gun will shoot)
一型	-xíng	-type
以上	yǐshàng	above, over
以下	yǐxià	under, below
有生力量	yǒushēnglìliang	effective strength (mil.)
运兵车	yùnbīngchē	personnel carrier (C: liàng) (mil.)
运输	yùنشū	to transport; transportation
重量	zhòngliàng	weight (other than human)
中型	zhōng xíng	medium type

装 甲

zhuāngjiǎ

to be armored; armor

自 行 火 炮

zìxíng huǒpào

self-propelled gun (C: mén)

STORY COMPREHENSION

小李在中学念书的时候就很喜欢运动。他不但什么运动都参加，书也念得不坏，家庭成份又好，所以他毕业以后不久，组织就通知他入伍。体格检查合格以后，先受基本训练。受训练的时候，小李很努力地学习操练各种武器和射击技术，比方说，他的步枪射击可以打中五百米以内的各种军事目标。很多跟他一起受训练的士兵不明白为什么他能射击得那么准确，所以都来请教他。干部知道了以后，就在上射击课的时候跟大家说，“我们都知道李同志的射击非常准确，每一次实弹射击，他差不多都可以百分之百地打中目标，这种水平在我们训练中心以前是没有的。我知道你们对学习很有积极性，希

Xiǎo Lǐ zài zhōngxué niànshū de shíhou jiù hěn xǐhuan yùndòng. Tā búdàn shénme yùndòng dōu cānjiā, shū yě niànde búhuài, jiātíng chéngfèn yòu hǎo, suóyì tā bìyè yǐhòu bùjiǔ, zǔzhī jiù tōngzhī tā rùwǔ. Tǐgé jiǎnchá hégé yǐhòu, xiān shòu jīběn xùnliàn. Shòu xùnliàn de shíhou, Xiǎo Lǐ hěn nǔlìde xuéxí cāoliàn gèzhǒng wǔqì hé shèjǐ jìshù, bǐfāngshuō, tāde bùqiāng shèjǐ kényì dǎzhòng wǔbǎimǐ yǐnèi de gèzhǒng jūnshì mùbiāo. Hěn duō gēn tā yìqǐ shòu xùnliàn de shìbīng bùmíngbai wèishénme tā néng shèjǐde nàme zhǔnquè, suóyì dōu lái qǐngjiào tā. Gàn bù zhīdaole yǐhòu, jiù zài shàng shèjǐkè de shíhou gēn dàjiā shuō, "Wǒmen dōu zhīdao Lǐ Tóngzhì de shèjǐ fēicháng zhǔnquè, méi yí cì shídàn shèjǐ, tā chàbùduō dōu kényì bǎifēnzhībǎide dǎzhòng mùbiāo, zhèzhǒng shuǐpíng zài wǒmen xùnliàn zhōngxīn yǐqián shì méiyóude. Wǒ zhīdao nǐmen duì xuéxí

望跟他学习。今天我请李同志给我们讲一讲他自己学习的方法，来帮助我们

把射击技术搞上去。”干部说完了以后，就请小李到前边来给大家说话，小李说，“射击的时候能不能打中目标，主要是看你的动作对不对。一般地说，步枪射击只包括三个基本动作，就是端枪、瞄准跟扣扳机。端枪的时候，两只手要维持得久，这样才能有时间来瞄准跟射击。第二，瞄准的时候，看准了目标就扣扳机，不要浪费时间。第三，扣扳机的时候不可以改变已经瞄准好的目标，否则就打不中了。”

有一个同志站起来问，“按照你的说明，射击实在很简单，为什么我们打不中呢？”小李说，“这恐怕是因为大多数的同志在端枪的时候不能维持得久，这样，就不能把端枪的动作做好，当然就打不准了。”这个

hěn yǒu jījìxìng, xīwàng gēn tā xuéxí.
 Jīntiān wǒ qǐng Lǐ Tóngzhì gěi wǒmen
 jiǎngyìjiǎng tā zìjǐ xuéxí de fāngfǎ,
 lái bāngzhù wǒmen bǎ shèjī jìshù
 gǎoshàngqù." Gàn bù shuō wán le yǐ hòu,
 jiù qǐng Xiǎo Lǐ dào qiánbianr lái
 gěi dàjiā shuō huà, Xiǎo Lǐ shuō,
 "Shèjī de shíhou néng bù néng dǎ zhòng
 mùbiāo, zhǔyào shì kàn nǐ de dòngzuò
 duì bú duì. Yìbān de shuō, bùqiāng
 shèjī zhǐ bāokuò sāngē jīběn dòngzuò,
 jiùshì duānqiāng, miáozhǔn gēn kòu
 bǎnjī. Duānqiāng de shíhou, liǎngzhǐ
 shǒu yào wéichí déjiǔ, zhèyàng cái
 néng yǒu shíjiān lái miáozhǔn gēn
 shèjī. Dìèr, miáozhǔn de shíhou, kàn
 zhǔn le mùbiāo jiù kòu bǎnjī, búyào
 làngfèi shíjiān. Dìsān, kòu bǎnjī
 de shíhou bùkěyì gǎibiàn yǐjīng miáo-
 zhǔn hǎo de mùbiāo, fǒuzé jiù dǎ-
 búzhòng le." Yǒu yí gè tóngzhì zhàn-
 qǐ lái wèn "Ànzhào nǐ de shuōmíng,
 shèjī shízài hěn jiǎndān, wèishénme
 wǒmen dǎ bú zhòng ne?" Xiǎo Lǐ shuō,
 "Zhè kǒngpà shì yīnwei dàduōshù de
 tóngzhì zài duānqiāng de shíhou
 bù néng wéichí de jiǔ, zhèyàng, jiù

时候，另外一个同志站起来说，“我就有这个毛病，端枪的时候老是维持不了多久，还没瞄准好呢，手已经累了，只好休息一会儿，结果打得又少，又不准。有什么办法手不会累？”小李说，“除了天天练习端枪以外没有别的办法。比方说，我开始学习射击科目以后，除了上课的时间练习以外，吃过了晚饭，很多人去散步、打乒乓球或是看电影什么的，我利用这段自己的时间到宿舍外头去练习端两小时的枪，几个星期以后，我就习惯了。所以在实弹射击的时候，我的手一点儿也不累，也不紧张。射击的成绩就比较好了。”他说完了以后，很多同志都说这个办法很好，都愿意在晚饭以后用自己的时间练习。

bùnéng bǎ duānqiāng de dòngzuò zuò hǎo, dāngrán jiù dǎ bùzhǔn le.” Zhège shíhou, lìngwài yíge tóngzhì zhànqǐlai shuō, "Wǒ jiù yǒu zhège máobìng, duānqiāng de shíhou lǎoshi wéichí bùliǎo duōjiǔ, hái méi miáozhǔn hǎo ne, shǒu yǐjīng lèile, zhǐhǎo xiūxi yíhuìr, jiéguǒ dǎde yòu shǎo, yòu bùzhǔn. Yǒu shénme bànfǎ shǒu búhuì lèi? Xiǎo Lǐ shuō, "Chúle tiāntiān liànxí duānqiāng yǐwài méiyǒu biéde bànfǎ. Bǐfāngshuō, wǒ kāishǐ xuéxí shèjǐ kēmù yǐhòu, chúle shàngkè de shíjiān liànxí yǐwài, chīguòle wǎnfàn, hěnduō rén qù sànbù, dǎ pīngpāngqiú huòshì kàn diànyǐng shénmede. Wǒ lìyòng zhèduàn zìjǐde shíjiān dào sùshè wàitou qù liànxí duān liǎngxiǎoshí de qiāng, jǐge xīngqī yǐhòu, wǒ jiù xíguàn le. Suóyì zài shídàn shèjǐ de shíhou, wǒde shǒu yìdiǎnr yě búlèi, yě bùjǐnzhāng. Shèjǐ de chéngjǐ jiù bǐjiào hǎo le." Tā shuō wánle yǐhòu, hěnduō tóngzhì dōu shuō zhège bànfǎ hěn hǎo, dōu yuànyì zài wǎnfàn yǐhòu yòng zìjǐde shíjiān liànxí.

步枪射击训练完了以后，他继续学习操作各种火炮，象火箭筒、榴弹炮、加农炮什么的。因为他学习得非常好，入伍训练受完以前组织就问他希望到解放军的哪一个部队去服役，他说希望去炮兵部队，所以他刚受完了训练就被分派到中国北方一个离苏联很近的边防炮兵部队去服役。在服役的时候，小李更努力地学习操作各种新型武器跟战术。不到半年，他对每一种火炮的性能、构造就都非常了解了。比方说，象加农炮的部件有多少、口径有多么大、有效射程有多么远；重型坦克有多少吨重；装甲有多么厚；速度每小时有多么快；榴弹炮有哪几种；发射速度是多少等等，他都很清楚。另外他也知道用火炮的战术。比方说，在进攻敌人阵地以前，应该先用加农炮或是榴弹炮

Bùqiāng shèjī xùnliàn wánle
yǐhòu, tā jìxù xuéxí cāozuò gèzhǒng
huǒpào, xiàng huǒjiàntǒng, liúdànpào,
jiānóngpào shénmede. Yīnwèi tā xué-
xíde fēichánghǎo, rùwǔ xùnliàn shòu
wán yǐqián zǔzhī jiù wèn tā xīwàng
dào jiěfàngjūn de nǎge bùduì qù fúyì,
tā shuō xīwàng qù pàobīng bùduì,
suóyì tā gāng shòuwánle xùnliàn jiù
bèi fēnpài dào Zhōngguó běifāng yíge
lí Sūlián hěn jīnde biānfāng pàobīng
bùduì qù fúyì. Zài fúyì de shíhou,
Xiǎo Lǐ gèng nǚlìde xuéxí cāozuò
gèzhǒng xīnxíng wǔqì gēn zhànshù.
Búdào bànnián, tā duì měi yìzhǒng
huǒpào de xìngnéng, gòuzào jiù dōu
fēicháng liǎojiě le. Bǐfāngshuō,
xiàng jiānóngpào de bùjiàn yǒu duō-
shǎo, kǒujīng yǒu duōme dà, yǒuxiào
shèchéng yǒu duōme yuǎn; zhòngxíng
tǎnkè yǒu duōshǎodūn zhòng; zhuāngjiǎ
yǒu duōme hòu; sùdù měi xiǎoshí yǒu
duōme kuài; liúdànpào yǒu nǎjǐzhǒng;
fāshè sùdù shì duōshǎo dēngdēng, tā
dōu hěn qīngchū. Lìngwài tā yě
zhīdao yòng huǒpào de zhànshù.
Bǐfāngshuō, zài jìngōng dírén zhèndì

摧毁敌人的工事跟有生力量，再用火箭筒射击敌人的坦克。为了有效地打坏敌人的坦克，火箭筒一定要在坦克开进有效射程以内的时候才可以发射等等。组织认为他是一个可靠的战士，就派他担任干部来负责训练刚来部队报到的战士。

yǐqián, yīnggāi xiān yòng jiānóngpào
huòshi liúdànào cuīhuǐ dírén de
gōngshì gēn yǒushēng lìliang, zài
yòng huǒjiàntǒng shèjī dírén de tǎnkè.
Wèile yǒuxiàode dǎhuài dírén de tǎnkè,
huǒjiàntǒng yíding yào zài tǎnkè
kāijìn yǒuxiào shèchéng yǐnèi de
shíhou cái kéyǐ fāshè dēngděng.
Zǔzhī rènwéi tā shì yíge kěkàode
zhànshì, jiù pài tā dānrèn gānbù lái
fùzé xùnlìan gāng lái bùduì bàodào de
zhànshì.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. When did Xiao Li like sports?
2. When did the "organization" notify Xiao Li to join the military service?
3. What did Xiao Li do after he had passed the physical examination?
4. What did Xiao Li learn during the training (2)?
5. How far was the target that Xiao Li could shoot accurately?
6. What did Xiao Li's comrades do when they didn't understand why he could shoot accurately?

7. What did the cadre do after he knew that everybody wanted to learn from Xiao Li?

8. What did the cadre say about Xiao Li's marksmanship?

9. In the cadre's opinion, why did many servicemen want to learn from Xiao Li?

10. According to Xiao Li, what was the main factor in shooting accurately?

11. What are the three actions/movements in firing a rifle?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)

12. What is the main point in holding a rifle before firing?

13. What is the main point of the second step in firing a rifle?

14. What is the main point of the third step in firing a rifle?

15. What did the first comrade ask about?

16. How did Xiao Li answer this question?

17. According to the second comrade asking a question, what was his trouble in firing a rifle?

18. What was the second comrade's question?

19. How did Xiao Li answer the second comrade's question?

20. What did many servicemen do after dinner (3)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)

21. a. What did Xiao Li do after dinner?

b. Why?

22. After the training on firing a rifle, what other specific weapons did Xiao Li have to operate (3)?
- (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)
23. Where did Xiao Li go after he had finished his military training?
(Give detailed answer)
24. What did Xiao Li learn about a "jianongpao" (3)?
- (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)
25. Where must a rocket launcher be located to destroy an attacking tank effectively?

STORY COMPREHENSION
Answers to Questions

1. When did Xiao Li like sports?
(During his high school years)
2. When did the "organization" notify Xiao Li to join the military service?
(Soon after high school)
3. What did Xiao Li do after he had passed the physical examination?
(Received basic military training)
4. What did Xiao Li learn during the training (2)?
(1) (How to operate weapons)
(2) (Marksmanship)
5. How far was the target that Xiao Li could shoot accurately?
(Within 500 meters)
6. What did Xiao Li's comrades do when they didn't understand why he could shoot accurately?
(They asked him how)
7. What did the cadre do after he knew that everybody wanted to learn from Xiao Li?
(He mentioned Xiao Li's marksmanship before class)
8. What did the cadre say about Xiao Li's marksmanship?
(He could hit the targets with almost 100% accuracy [which had never happened at the training center before])

9. In the cadre's opinion, why did many servicemen want to learn from Xiao Li?
(Because they were enthusiastic [for learning])
10. According to Xiao Li, what was the main factor in shooting accurately?
(Bodily movements)
11. What are the three actions/movements in firing a rifle?
(1) (Holding a rifle)
(2) (Aiming at the target)
(3) (Pulling the trigger)
12. What is the main point in holding a rifle before firing?
(Holding the rifle with both hands)
OR (Sustaining it [holding it steady] for a long time)
13. What is the main point of the second step in firing a rifle?
(Don't waste time [before firing])
14. What is the main point of the third step in firing a rifle?
(Don't move [when firing at the target])
15. What did the first comrade ask about?
([Firing accurately sounds simple], why can't people do it well)
16. How did Xiao Li answer this question?
(Because most comrades can't hold the rifle [steady] long enough before firing)
17. According to the second comrade asking a question, what was his trouble in firing a rifle?
(He had trouble holding a rifle long enough to fire before his hands got tired)

18. What was the second comrade's question?

(It was regarding holding a rifle for a long time)

19. How did Xiao Li answer the second comrade's question?

([There is no second choice except] practice)

20. What did many servicemen do after dinner (3)?

(1) (Strolling)

(2) (Playing Ping-Pong)

(3) (Going to the movies)

21. a. What did Xiao Li do after dinner?

(Train [for himself])

OR (Hold a rifle for two hours)

b. Why?

(Improve marksmanship)

22. After the training on firing a rifle, what other specific weapons did Xiao Li have to operate (3)?

(1) (Rocket launcher)

(2) (Howitzer)

(3) (Gun)

23. Where did Xiao Li go after he had finished his military training?
(Give detailed answer)

([He served in] an artillery troop in northern China close to USSR)

24. What did Xiao Li learn about a "jianongpao" (3)?

(1) (Parts)

(2) (Caliber)

(3) (Range)

WAE, Unit 3

25. Where must a rocket launcher be located to destroy an attacking tank effectively?

(Within the effective firing range [of the rocket launcher])

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 步兵在进攻敌人阵地的时候，坦克怎么配合他们打仗？

Bùbīng zài jìngōng dírén zhèndì de shíhou, tǎnkè zěnmē pèihé tāmen dǎzhàng?

2. 一般地说，空对空导弹在什么地方发射？目标是什么？

Yībānde shuō, kōngduìkōng dǎodàn zài shénme dìfang fāshè? Mùbiāo shì shénme?

3. 请说一说中国炮兵部队目前都使用些什么武器？

Qǐng shuōyishuō Zhōngguó pàobīng bùduì mùqián dōu shǐyòng xiē shénme wǔqì.

4. 运兵车的任务是什么？为什么在战时运兵车非常有用？

Yùnbīngchē de rènwù shì shénme? Wèishénme zài zhànshí yùnbīngchē fēicháng yǒu yòng?

5. 跟敌人进行巷战的时候，士兵用什么武器最有用？为什么？

Gēn dírén jìnxíng xiàngzhàn de shíhou, shìbīng yòng shénme wǔqì zuì yǒuyòng? Wèishénme?

6. 多少吨以下的坦克叫轻型坦克？这种坦克的优点跟缺点在哪儿/哪里？

Duōshǎodūn yǐxià de tǎnkè jiào qīngxíng tǎnkè? Zhèzhǒng tǎnkè de yōudiǎn gēn quēdiǎn zài nǎr/nǎlǐ?

7. 中国是从什么时候开始搞四个现代化的？他们认为多少年以后可以赶上先进国家的科技水平？
Zhōngguó shì cóng shénme shíhou kāishǐ gǎo sìge xiàndàihuà de? Tāmen rènwéi duōshǎonián yǐhòu kéyǐ gǎnshàng xiānjìn guójiā de kējì shuǐpíng?
8. 听说中国还不能制造战斗机用的发动机。这是不是谣言？为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó hái bùnéng zhìzào zhàn dòuji yòngde fādòngjī. Zhè shì bushi yáoyán? Wèishénme?
9. 你受入伍训练的时期得学习武装泅渡吗？武装泅渡在战时有什么用？
Nǐ shòu rùwǔ xùnliàn de shíqī děi xuéxí wǔzhuāng qiúdù ma? Wǔzhuāng qiúdù zài zhànshí yǒu shénme yòng?
10. 在中国，党中央希望每一个青年都应该对国家作出贡献吗？为什么？
Zài Zhōngguó, Dǎngzhōngyāng xīwàng měiyíge qīngnián dōu yīnggāi duì guójiā zuòchū gòngxiàn ma? Wèishénme?
11. 一般地说，重型坦克的装甲应该有多么厚？有几门自行火炮？这种火炮的有效射程有多么远？
Yìbānde shuō, zhòngxíng tǎnkè de zhuāngjiǎ yīnggāi yǒu duōme hòu? Yǒu jǐmén zìxíng huǒpào? Zhèzhǒng huǒpào de yǒuxiào shèchéng yǒu duōme yuǎn?
12. 请讲一讲为什么中国发展四个现代化，特别着重把科技搞上去？
Qǐng jiǎngyíjiǎng wèishénme Zhōngguó fāzhǎn sìge xiàndàihuà, tèbié zhuózhòng bǎ kējì gǎoshàngqu?
13. 听说中国训练的民兵早就超过三千万人了，为什么中国需要这么多的民兵？请说一说。
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó xùnliàn de mínbīng zǎo jiù chāoguò sānqiānwàn rén le, wèishénme Zhōngguó xūyào zhèmeduō de mínbīng? Qǐng shuōyíshuō.

14. 火箭筒的构造简单，重量也轻，为什么是一种打坦克的有效武器？

Huǒjiàntǒng de gòuzào jiǎndān, zhòngliàng yě qīng, wèishénme shì yìzhǒng dǎ tǎnkè de yǒuxiào wǔqì?

15. 加农炮在配合陆军作战的时候的主要任务是什么？

Jiānóngpào zài pèihé lùjūn zuòzhàn de shíhou de zhǔyào rènwù shì shénme?

16. 请说一说为什么中国游击队跟反动派打仗常常使用伏击战术？

Qǐng shuōyishuō wèishénme Zhōngguó yóujīduì gēn fǎndòngpài dǎzhàng chángcháng shǐyòng fújī zhànshù?

17. 一般地说，火箭筒跟高射炮的有效射程有多远？他们的任务有什么不一样？

Yìbānde shuō, huǒjiàntǒng gēn gāoshèpào de yǒuxiào shèchéng yǒu duōyuǎn? Tāmende rènwù yǒu shénme bùyiàng?

18. 为了掌握步枪的射击技术，士兵应该常常练习什么科目？

Wèile zhǎngwò bùqiāng de shèjī jìshù, shìbīng yīnggāi chángcháng liànxí shénme kēmù?

19. 为什么提高武装民兵的质量，要着重抓训练？请说一说。

Wèishénme tígāo wǔzhuāng mínbīng de zhìliàng, yào zhuózhòng zhuā xùnliàn? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

20. 听说社会帝国主义（在中国北方）的边防部队，装备了非常多的重型坦克跟空对空导弹。为什么？

Tīngshuō Shèhuìdìguózhǔyì (zài Zhōngguó běifāng) de biānfáng bùduì zhuāngbèile fēicháng duōde zhòngxíng tǎnkè gēn kōngduìkōng dǎodàn. Wèishénme?

21. 请你随便说一说，一个中国解放军的干部是怎么挑选出来的？
Qǐng nǐ suíbiàn shuōyishuō, yíge Zhōngguó Jiěfàngjūn de gānbù shì zěnmē tiāoxuǎn chūlai de?
22. 卡宾枪也是一种自动武器吗？请说一说在什么情况下使用最有效？
Kǎbīnqiāng yě shì yìzhǒng zìdòng wǔqì ma? Qǐng shuōyishuō zài shénme qíngkuàngxià shǐyòng zuì yǒuxiào?
23. 中国步兵使用的基本武器有那些？为什么他们经常进行实弹射击演习？
Zhōngguó bùbīng shǐyòngde jīběn wǔqì yǒu nǎxiē? Wèishénme tāmen jīngcháng jìnxíng shídàn shèjī yǎnxí?
24. 榴弹炮是各种火炮里边儿/里头，口径最大的吗？请你说一说它的性能。
Liúdàn pào shì gèzhǒng huǒpào lǐbiānr/lǐtóu, kǒujīng zuì dàde ma? Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō tāde xìngnéng?
25. 听说有很多最现代化的武器中国不是不能制造，而是不愿意制造。为什么？
Tīngshuō yǒu hěnduō zuì xiàndàihuà de wǔqì Zhōngguó búshì bùnéng zhìzào, érshì búyuànyì zhìzào. Wèishénme?
26. 中国人民解放军在一九四九年以前，武器少、装备差。为什么能消灭反动派的现代化军队？
Zhōngguó Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn zài yījiūsìjiǔnián yǐqián, wǔqì shǎo, zhuāngbèi chā. Wèishénme néng xiāomiè fǎndòngpài de xiàndàihuà jūnduì?
27. 一般地说，用火箭筒打坦克，应该打什么地方最有效？为什么？
Yìbānde shuō, yòng huǒjiàntǒng dǎ tǎnkè, yīnggāi dǎ shénme dìfang zuì yǒuxiào? Wèishénme?

28. 听说中国的科技人员在四人帮时期都被(分)派到乡下去搞劳动、生产,那是为什么?

Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde kējì rényuán zài sìrénbāng shíqī dōu bèi (fēn)pài dào xiāngxià qù gǎo láodòng, shēngchǎn, nà shì wèishénme?

29. 打仗的时候,不但要摧毁敌人的工事,也应该杀死掩体里的敌人。为什么?

Dǎzhàng de shíhòu, búdàn yào cuīhuǐ dírén de gōngshì, yī yīngāi shā sǐ yǎntǐlǐ de dírén. Wèishénme?

30. 组织挑选担任伏击任务的机枪手,都是受过特别军事训练的战士吗?为什么?

Zǔzhī tiāoxuǎn dānrèn fújī rènwù de jīqiāngshǒu, dōu shì shòuguò tèbié jūnshì xùnliàn de zhànshì ma? Wèishénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. When the infantry attacks the enemy fortifications, the artillery often provides very strong covering fire. Otherwise, the assaulting infantry could not destroy the enemy's fortifications. They would all be killed by the enemy machine guns.
2. If the effective strength of the infantry unit is small when they attack, then tanks and armored personnel carriers must be used to transport the troops.
3. The infantry often uses rocket launchers, recoilless rifles, and mortars when they attack the enemy. They use rocket launchers and recoilless rifles to effectively destroy the enemy tanks and pillboxes, and use mortars to attack enemy infantry and artillery.
4. Because mortars and rocket launchers are used by the infantry, the range is very short. The range of the howitzers and guns that are used by the artillery is comparatively long.

5. When using tanks to attack, their armor must be neither too thick nor too thin. If the armor is too thick, the weight of the tank will then be too great and its speed too slow. If it is too thin, then it can be destroyed by heavy machine gun fire.

6. The armor of this personnel carrier is too thin, the enemy can use a heavy machine gun or mortar to destroy it. We must depend on its fast speed, as this is its only advantage.

7. If the enemy pillbox is very strong, then mortars will be ineffective. We must use rocket launchers and howitzers to destroy the enemy pillbox.

8. The caliber and range of guns have a definite relationship. For example, a 130-mm cannon's range is greater than the range of a 120-mm cannon.

9. The weight of today's modern tank is approximately 50 tons. If the weight were over 50 tons, then the engine would often develop a malfunction, they would have to carry too many parts.

10. Armored personnel carriers are very useful. Not only are they used to transport infantry, but also to transport weapons and equipment. Sometimes they transport mortars, recoilless rifles, etc.

11. The armor of the armored personnel carrier is very thin; therefore, its speed is very fast but its armor is not too strong.

12. The ordinary armored car has only machine guns or rocket launchers. Some have been equipped with mortars and howitzers, but they usually do not carry very many artillery shells.

13. Sometimes armored cars that have howitzers or cannons are called "self-propelled guns." They usually coordinate very closely with attacking units to provide covering fire. The stress is on firepower, and not on maneuverability (movement).

14. Self-propelled guns and tanks often attack together. The mission of the self-propelled gun is to suppress the enemy's firepower when the tanks assault the enemy position.

15. Some rocket launchers and antiaircraft guns have the same mission. They're both used for the purpose of destroying enemy aircraft.

16. If the range of this howitzer is too far, we must use a radar to aim (accurately). In this way we can hit the target accurately.

17. The range of a howitzer and the range of a mortar are really different. The range of a howitzer is over 12 kilometers, but the range of a mortar is from 460 to 5700 meters.

18. What is the average range of a rocket launcher? That depends on how large the caliber is. Some large types have a range of over 9000 meters.

19. Formerly there were three types of tank. There was the light-type tank, medium tank, and also the heavy tank. Now there are only two types. Now there are no heavy tanks.

20. The first (primary) mission of the light tank is reconnaissance. In combat situations, the armor of the light tank is too thin. It is very easily destroyed by recoilless rifles and hand grenades.

21. The infantry of the Liberation Army uses a special rocket launcher, called a "Type 62." It is the same as the Russian "PRG-7."

22. The infantry troops use the "Type 62" rocket launcher to destroy enemy tanks. It is a very effective weapon, but its range is short. The effective range is less than 150 meters.

23. When using close-range rocket launchers to attack enemy tanks, you must pay attention to the plan of attack. It is most important to aim accurately and not fire too fast.

24. Tanks and infantry often attack together. The targets of the tanks are fortifications and pillboxes. This is because the firepower of the tank is very strong.

25. The weapons manufactured in the PRC are often the same type as those manufactured in Russia. Therefore, they have the same characteristics. The ranges, weights, calibers, etc. are all the same.

26. The largest caliber howitzer of the PLA is the "Type 66." Its caliber is 152 millimeters, and its range is 18,500 meters. It is the same as the "D-20" howitzer produced in Russia.

27. The fighter planes developed in China are not as good as those developed in the United States. For example, the speed of the "F-9" manufactured in China is much slower than the modern American fighter plane.

28. Since 1949, the objective of the Peoples Liberation Army has been to liberate Taiwan, implementing this policy, has really improved the development of China's science and technology.

29. If the air-to-air missile cannot catch up with the enemy fighter plane, then it is useless. In that case, we must depend on anti-aircraft guns and radar.

30. In today's advanced nations, the tactics of amphibious warfare have developed very quickly, and are also very effective. If tactics develop badly, then it would be impossible to defend the fatherland.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Xiǎo Jīn shì fēijīchǎng de léidá cāozuò rényuán, yǒu yíci, tā cóng léidáshàng kànjian yíjià zhàndòuji jiàngluòde sùdù tài kuài, kǒngpà jiàngluòde yǐhòu tíngbuzhù huì zhuàngshàng fēijīchǎng wàibianr de xiūlǐchǎng. Tā hēnkuàide tóngzhī jiàshǐyuán gāiguólai cái méi chūshì.
2. Dǎngde gǎnbù gàoosu lái Zhōngguó xuéxí Zhōngwén de wànguo xuésheng shuō, "Gèwèi dōushi cóng xiānjìn guójiā láide péngyou, yěxǔ juéde Zhōngguó hěn qiáng hěn luòhòu, zhè shì yǒu yuányīn de. Zhōngguó yībǎiduōnián yílái yìzhí shòu wàiguóde qīnlüè hé fǎndòngpài de bōxuē, xīn Zhōngguó chénglì yǐhòu yǒu shòudào Sīrénbāng de pòhuài. Wǒmen xiànzài yǐjīng kāishǐ zhuā shēngchǎn bǎ rénmin de shēnghuó shuǐpíng gāoshàngqu."
3. Mùqián Zhōngguó zhìzàode fādòngjī yǒu jǐge língjiàn de zhìliàng bútài hǎo, suǒyì tǎnkè de xìngnéng hái gǎnbushàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng. Tīngshuō Dǎngzhōngyāng juédìng yìfāngmian jìnkǒu wàiguóde língjiàn yìfāngmian yánjiu gǎiliáng zhìliàng, zhèyàng yílái wūnián yǐnèi jiù kéyì gǎnshàng wàiguó zhìzàode le.
4. Zǔzhī pài wǒmen zhège xiǎo dānwèi de tóngzhī zài jìntiān wǎnshàng tōuxí hé nàbiān de dírén. Shèjīshǒu Fāng Dànián zhǔnbèi de shíhou chúlè bùqiāng shòuliúdàn dēngdēng wǔqì yìwài hái dàile kuàizi, wǎn, chábēi shénmede, gǎnbù kànjiànle duì tā shuō, "Xiǎo Fāng, nǐ zhè shì qù lǚxíng, nǎli shì qù dǎzhàng. Wǒmen yào wǔzhuāng qiúdù, dàide dōngxī yuèshǎo yuèhǎo. Háishì bǎ nàxiē kuàizi, wǎn liúxiàlai ba."

5. Tīngshuō Zhōngguó pàobǐng bùduì yòngde wǔqì mùqián zhǐyǒu pǎijīpào, liúdnànpào liǎngzhǒng huǒpào, wúlùn shí kǒujǐng gēn huǒlì dōu gǎnbushàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng. Bùduì fùzérén hǎojícì xiàng Dǎngzhōngyāng jiànyì zhìzào dà kǒujǐng de jiānóngpào, kěshì Dǎngzhōngyāng shuō Sīrénbāng pòhuàile gèzhǒng wǔqì shēngchǎn, jiānóngpào de shēngchǎn hái dēi dēng yíge shíqī.

6. Wǒmen rénmín gōngshè de shèyuán sānnián yīqián jiànde shuǐkù, zuìjìn fāxiàn chángcháng yǒu rén xiǎng pòhuài. Bǐfāngshuō shàngge yuè Xiǎo Lǐ hé jǐge péngyou zài shuǐkùbiān yēcān, fāxiàn yíge zhànyàobāo. Zuótiān Xiǎo Jīn de bàba cóng nàr jīngguò yòu kànjian shuǐlǐbianr yǒu yíge shuǐléi. Wǒmen dēi kuàiyidiǎnr chàyíchá zhège dìqū shì bushì yǒu fǎndòngfènzi.

7. Shèhuì dīguózhǔyì guójiā jīngcháng qīnlüè Zhōngguóde běifang. Tāmende dìmiàn bùduì shǐyòngde zhǔyào gōngjī wǔqì shì zhòng tǎnkè. Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde kējì rényuán yǐjīng yánjiu chūlai yìzhǒng huǒlì fēicháng qiángde fǎntǎnkèpào, kěyì dǎhuài huòshì cuīhuǐ dírénde sishídūn zuǒyòu de zhòng tǎnkè.

8. Měiguó guówùyuàn de yíwèi kēzhǎng dào Zhōngguó lái fǎngwèn, tā gēn fùzé zhāodài de gǎnbù shuō, "Wǒ zhǐ xīwàng kànyikan nǐmen luòhòu dìqū rénmín shēnghuó de qíngxíng." Gǎnbù shuō, "Duìbuqǐ, xiānsheng. Zhōngguó gēn Měiguó yíyàng, dōu yǒu luòhòu dìqū. Wǒ juéde búbì cānguānle. Háishi ràng wǒ péi nǐ cānguān Zhōngguóde shēngchǎn jiànshè, hǎo buhǎo?"

9. Zhǐhuīyuán gàosu gè dānwèide fùzérén shuō, "Pàobǐng hé tǎnkè bùduì zhīyuán wǒmen xiān cuīhuǐ dírénde gōngshì, dànshi zhè bīngbù yìwèizhe dírén suǒyǒude yǒushēng lìliàng dōu xiāomièle. Wǒmen zài gōngjī de shíhou, háishi yào xiǎoxīn tāmen de fújī."

10. Gēnjù wǒmen sōují dào de zuìxīn qíngbào, shèhuì dīguózhǔyì yǐjīng kāishǐ zhìzào yìzhǒng zhōngxíng tǎnkè. Tāde zhuāngjiǎ bǐ mùqián zuìdàde tǎnkè háiyào hòu shícùn; érqǐ, zìxíng huǒpào de kǒujìng yě dàdeduō. Rúguǒ wǒmen bù yánjiū chūlai yìzhǒng gèngdà kǒujìng de fǎntǎnkèpào, jiānglái yídìng méiyǒu bànfǎ fángyù tāmen de qīnlüè.

11. Pàobǐng dānwèi de fùzérén zài bàogàolǐ shuō, "Liùge yuè yǐqián zǔzhǐ tōngzhǐ wǒmen kéyǐ shǐyòng xīnde pǎijīpào yǎnxí; liùge yuè guòqùle, xīnde hái méi lái, duì wǒmen xùnliàn zhànshì gēn bùfāngbian. Qǐng zǔzhǐ zài gēn bīnggōngchǎng shuōyìshuō."

12. Zhāng Guóxiáng shì yìsōu yúlétǐng de fùzérén, měitiān mángdào wǎnshàng shídiǎnduōzhōng cái huíjiā. Tāde àiren wèn tā wèishénme zǒngshì zhème wǎn cái dàojiā, háizi méi jīhuì kàndào nǐ." Tā shuō, nǐ bùmíngbai; háihǎo zhè búshì dǎzhàng de shíhou, rúguǒ shì zhànshí, wǒ kǒngpà shítiān, bānge yuè yě huíbulai yíci ne."

13. Xiǎo Lǐ hé Xiǎo Wáng, yíge shì nánfāng rén, yíge shì běifāng rén. Zài bùduì fúyì de shíhou, gānbù fēnpài tāmen fùzé yíge huǒjiàntǒng. Suóyì píngcháng tāmen yìtóng bǎoyǎng, yìtóng cāoliàn, fāshēng gùzhàng de shíhou yìtóng xiūlǐ, qítāde shìqing tāmen liǎngge rén yě xiàng xiōngdì yíyàng bǐcǐ bāngzhù.
14. Kōngduìkōng dǎodàn shì yìzhǒng fēicháng jìnbùde wǔqì, zhǐyào tā dǎzhòng dírénde fēiji yídìng kényì cuīhuǐ. Búguò, zuòzhàn de shíhou, fāshè kōngduìkōng dǎodàn de fēixíng rényuán yídìng děi tèbié xiǎoxin, yàoburán, yě hěn róngyì dǎzhòng zìjǐ tóngzhì de fēiji.
15. Bùduì fùzérén xiàng Dǎngzhōngyāng pàilaide gānbù shuō, "Wǒmen mùqián zuì xūyàode shì yùnbǐngchē. Xiānzài zhǐyǒu shíliàng yùnbǐngchē, érqǐě dōu shì zhōngxíngde, měi yíci yǎnxí zuòzhàn dōu làngfèi hěnduō shíjiān yùنشū zhǐzhānyuán. Qǐng zài fēnpèi gěi wǒmen shíliàng dàxíngde yùnbǐngchē."

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate," because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 3

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Lǐ Jiànguó and Colonel Dunham continue their discussion from the previous unit.

1. D: What types of antitank guns does the PLA have?

L: 我们两门反坦克炮。一门是五七毫米五五型的，一门是八五毫米五五型的。五七毫米的每分钟可以发射二十五发炮弹，八五毫米的每分钟发射十五到二十发。八五毫米的跟苏联造的差不多。

Wǒmen yǒu liǎngmén fǎntǎnkèpào. Yīmén shì wǔqīháomǐ wǔwǔxíngde, yīmén shì bāwǔháomǐ wǔwǔxíngde. Wǔqīháomǐde měifēnzhōng kěyǐ fāshè èrshiwǔfā pàodàn, bāwǔháomǐde měifēnzhōng fāshè shíwǔ dào èrshífā. Bāwǔháomǐde gēn Sūlián zàode chàbuduō.

2. D: Okay. How about rocket launchers?

L: 我们两种火箭炮。一种是一三二毫米的，射程是九千米，一种是一四〇毫米的，射程是九千八百一十米。

Wǒmen yǒu liǎngzhǒng huǒjiànào. Yīzhǒng shì yīsānèrháomǐde, shèchéng shì jiǔqiānmǐ, yīzhǒng shì yīsìlíngHàomǐde, shèchéng shì jiǔqiānbābǎiyīshímǐ.

3. D: How long does it take to reload them?

L: 两种都要用五分钟到十分钟来装填。

Liǎngzhǒng dōu yào yòng wǔfēn zhōng dào shífēn zhōng lái zhuāngtián.

4. D: You said before that you have three kinds of rocket launchers. What's the third type?

L: 那种是小一点(儿)的一〇七毫米火箭炮。只用三分钟就可以装填好。射程是八千〇五十米。

Nàzhǒng shì xiǎoyīdiǎn(r) de yīlíngqīháomǐ huǒjiànào. Zhǐ yòng sānfēn zhōng jiù kěyǐ zhuāngtiánhǎo. Shèchéng shì bāqiānlíngwǔshímǐ.

5. D: Do you have any self-propelled guns?

L: 有，我们有一种一二二毫米五四型的榴弹炮，是我们中国自己设计，自己制造的第一种自行火炮。

Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu yīzhǒng yīèrèrháomǐ wǔsìxíng de liúdànpào, shì wǒmen Zhōngguó zìjǐ shèjì, zìjǐ zhìzào de dìyīzhǒng zìxíng huǒpào.

6. D: I've heard that you also have a "Type 54" 122 mm howitzer which isn't self-propelled.

L: 是的。这种火箭炮的射程是一万一千八百米，每分钟可以发射五、六炮弹。

Shìde. Zhèzhǒng huǒjiàn pào de shèchéng shì yīwànyīqiānbābǎimǐ, měifēnzhōng kěyǐ fāshè wǔliùfā pàodàn.

7. D: Do you have mortars?

L: 当然有。迫击炮是一种基本武器，也是构造最简单的一种。迫击炮的炮弹是从前边装填的，射程没有榴弹炮那么远。

Dāngrányǒu. Pǎijīpào shì yīzhǒng jīběn wǔqì, yě shì gòuzào zuì jiǎndān de yīzhǒng. Pǎijīpào de pàodàn shì cóng qiánbiān zhuāngtián de, shèchéng méiyǒu liúdànpào nàme yuǎn.

8. D: Mortars can be really useful in guerrilla warfare. I remember that during the last war we fought, our enemy used mortars very effectively.

L: 你说的很对。我们训练战士怎么在不同的情况下使用迫击炮。比方说，象你刚才说的游击战就是一种特别的情况。

Nǐ shuōde hěn duì. Wǒmen xùnliàn zhànshì zěnmē zài bùtóngde qíngkuàngxià shǐyòng pǎijīpào. Bǐfāngshuō, xiàng nǐ gāngcái shuōde yóujīzhàn jiù shì yīzhǒng tèbiéde qíngkuàng.

9. D: I suppose that the artillery is an important branch of the Chinese Army.

L: 当然是重要的兵种。在战时，炮兵非常重要。他们和空军一起配合步兵作战。

Dāngrán shì zhòngyào de bīngzhǒng. Zài zhànshí, pàobīng fēicháng zhòngyào. Tāmen hé kōngjūn yìqǐ pèihé bùbīng zuòzhàn.

10. D: Then the largest artillery piece that you have is a gun, right?

L: 不是。我们最大的火炮是一五二毫米的榴弹炮。你们美国的陆军呢？你们最常用的火炮包括哪些？
Búshì. Wǒmen zuìdàde huǒpào shì yīwǔèrháomǐde liúdànpào. Nǐmen Měiguó Lùjūn ne? Nǐmen zuì chángyòngde huǒpào bāokuò nǎxiē?

11. D: The most numerous artillery we use is the 105 mm howitzer. Many of these are self-propelled. The only gun that we have is a 175 mm self-propelled model. Do you have any artillery this big?

L: 我没听说过。也许还在发展着呢。这门一七五毫米的加农炮是你们最大的火炮吗？
Wǒ méi tīngshuōguo. Yěxǔ hái zài fāzhǎnzhe ne. Zhèmén yīqīwǔháomǐ de jiānóngpào shì nǐmen zuìdàde huǒpào ma?

12. D: No. Our largest is a 203 mm self-propelled howitzer. Between the 105 mm and the 203 mm howitzers, we also have some 155 mm howitzers, some of which are also self-propelled. Let me ask you, how are troops transported from one place to another in the Chinese Army?

L: 大部分的战士都是走路。不过我们有的时候也用装甲运兵车来运输部队。
Dàbùfen de zhànshì dōu shì zǒulù. Búguò wǒmen yǒushíhou yě yòng zhuāngjiǎ yùnbīngchē lái yùnshū bùduì.

13. D: How many types of personnel carriers do you have?

L: 有好几种。我们常用的是中型装甲运兵车，装甲比较厚。每辆车有好几吨重。你知道装甲薄的运兵车在战时没有用。

Yǒu hǎojǐzhǒng. Wǒmen chángyòngde shì zhōngxíng zhuāngjiǎ yùnbīngchē, zhuāngjiǎ bǐjiào hòu. Měiliàng chē yǒu hǎojǐdūn zhòng. Nǐ zhīdao zhuāngjiǎ báo de yùnbīngchē zài zhànshí méiyǒu yòng.

14. D: Well, Comrade Li, this discussion has been very interesting. Thanks.

L: 没什么。谢谢你来参观，再见。

Méi shénme. Xièxie nǐ lái cānguān, zài jiàn.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: An enemy assault is anticipated on the village of "Sanli Dao" by the enemy aggressor forces. The attack is expected within 48 hours, and defensive fortifications have not yet been completed.

Role 1: Comrade Fang is the commander of the defense forces of the village. So far, 40 percent of the fortifications planned for the village have been completed, 50 percent can be completed within 48 hours using militia and peasants as laborers, and 10 percent will require 72 hours to complete. The majority of friendly forces available is infantry (3500 infantrymen) and militia (1500 militiamen), with one artillery unit and two tank units (45 light tanks & 15 self-propelled guns). The infantry is equipped with rocket launchers and mortars, but the mortars are effective only against infantry, since the range of the rocket launchers is very short (less than 100 meters). The artillery unit has five cannons with ranges over 20 miles, 15 with ranges between 10 and 12 miles, and 75 antitank guns with ranges up to 1000 meters.

Role 2: Comrade Zhao is the commander of the reconnaissance units. The enemy forces include three separate attack/assault units. Unit #1 is composed of 40 tanks and 2000 infantrymen, and is advancing rapidly from the south along the major road in the province. Unit #2 is composed of 45 tanks and 1000 infantrymen (in personnel carriers) and is coming from the southwest. Unit #3 includes 2500 infantrymen advancing from the southeast. Unit #1 should arrive in the vicinity of the village within 30 hours, and is expected to prepare the assault positions for all three of the enemy attack units. The other two units are expected to arrive within 48 hours, and as their attack positions will have already been prepared by Unit #1, they should be prepared to attack almost immediately.

Role 3: Comrade Wang is the commander of all defensive forces in the vicinity. His primary priority is to slow down the enemy forces moving toward the village. If possible, he would like to use the long-range artillery and/or patrol units to harass and/or ambush the leading enemy forces, but must consider the available ammunition and patrol personnel situations. Another possibility would be to use special militia units as guerrillas to slow down the enemy forces. He is also worried about the enemy's armor/tank units and armored personnel carrier units, as the friendly machine gun/mortar units will have little effect on their attack. He needs to know which weapons are available for use against the armored vehicles, and at what ranges the weapons will be effective. If the friendly units are unable to slow down the enemy's Unit #1, would it be advisable or possible to attack it before the other two units could arrive?

Scenario 2

Situation: The enemy is about to attack a small defensive force located on Hill #362. The enemy force consists of five medium tanks, 10 light tanks, 10 armored personnel carriers, and 150 infantrymen.

Role 1: Comrade Sun is the infantry commander. He has 80 infantrymen (60 Regular Army and 20 militiamen), all located in foxholes or in trenches. They have also already completed the construction of five pillboxes, but have not yet decided which weapons should be placed in them. The infantry unit has eight machine guns, 35 rocket launchers, and five mortars, as well as their rifles, hand grenades, and 24 dynamite charges. The machine guns, rifles, hand grenades, and mortars are effective only against infantry, and are useless against the enemy tanks and personnel carriers. The rocket launchers are effective against light tanks and personnel carriers at ranges less than 100 meters, and against medium tanks at ranges under 50 meters. The dynamite charges are very effective against all armored vehicles, but the infantrymen must place the charges right beside the vehicle in order for them to be effective.

Role 2: Comrade Song is the artillery commander. He has four lightly armored antitank guns, two howitzers, three self-propelled guns (lightly armored), and two antiaircraft guns available. Only the howitzers have ammunition that is effective against infantry, but all of the artillery pieces have ammunition to be used against armored vehicles at ranges under 2000 meters. There is plenty of ammunition for the antitank guns, and only they are small enough to be placed in the pillboxes. The howitzers have only 50 rounds of ammunition effective against the enemy's infantry, and those would probably be used up within 5 minutes of combat. For use against long-range armored targets, the antiaircraft guns would probably be most effective; however, they have no defensive armor at all.

Role 3: Comrade Huang is the position commander. He wishes to send out patrols to reconnoiter the enemy positions, but is not sure that the effective strength of the unit is great enough to be able to afford patrols. He must determine exactly what weapons he has available for defense, the most effective targets, the most effective ranges for all weapons, and the best methods for protecting the weapons he has available. He must decide which weapons should be used to suppress the enemy's covering fire, as well as the best tactics to defend against the following possible enemy attacks:

1. Enemy attack with armored vehicles only.
2. Enemy attack with infantry only.
3. Enemy combined (infantry and armor) attack.
 - a. Tanks leading the attack.
 - b. Infantry leading the attack.

Scenario 3

Situation: Three PLA officers have met to discuss procurement of armored vehicles from one of the "advanced nations." For political reasons, only one type of armored vehicle can be purchased, and the other two must be locally produced.

Role 1: Comrade Lin feels that the PRC should purchase armored personnel carriers, as the infantry is the backbone of the PRC Armed Forces and the use of personnel carriers increases their effectiveness in both defense and attack. Moreover, many different types of weapons can be placed on the armored personnel carriers (APCs) in order to increase their firepower; machine guns or mortars can be placed on the APCs to suppress enemy fire, or antitank guns or rocket launchers can be put on them to destroy enemy tanks and/or defensive fortifications. Moreover, each APC can carry 10 infantrymen, and the armor of the APC is thick enough so that the infantrymen could not be injured by enemy machine guns, rifles, or hand grenades.

Role 2: Comrade Chen feels that medium tanks should be purchased. Though their speed is not as fast as the personnel carrier, their armor is much thicker so that they are very difficult for the enemy to destroy. Moreover, the firepower of the tanks is comparatively strong/fierce, and their guns are very effective for destroying enemy fortifications, personnel carriers, or other tanks at long ranges. The tanks also carry machine guns which are effective against enemy infantry and vehicles without armor. The tanks can also carry five-six infantrymen on top of it while attacking, so that it can also be used to move troops.

Role 3: Comrade Yang believes that they should buy self-propelled guns. As the infantry is the most important part of the PRC's military forces, the most important weapon is one which can cover the infantry in attack or defense at extremely long ranges, and only the self-propelled guns can do this. Even though the self-propelled guns have a slower speed than the personnel carriers and much thinner armor than the tanks, they can attack both infantry and armored targets, and provide covering fire for the infantry at greater ranges. They also need not be so concerned about enemy firepower, as the ranges of their howitzers and guns is usually greater than that of the enemy mortars, rocket launchers, antitank guns, etc.

UNIT 4

DIALOGUE

1. A: 解放军的三个军种之中恐怕海军最弱吧?
B: 不错。我们没有大军舰, 像航空母舰、巡洋舰, 什么的。最大的只有三千多吨。

2. A: 你们的海军有什么舰艇?
B: 有驱逐舰、潜水艇、鱼雷艇、猎潜舰、护卫舰、登陆舰、登陆艇、巡逻艇跟辅助舰。辅助舰也叫辅助船, 包括运输舰、油船, 等等。

3. A: 有的人说你们还有导弹快艇, 并且有的驱逐舰跟潜水艇已经装配了核武器。是真的吗?
B: 是真的。但是敌人不先用核武器攻击我们, 我们不会用核武器报复。

4. A: 你们的舰艇是自己设计、自己造的还是仿照苏联舰艇造的?
B: 大部分是自己设计、自己造的。不需要外国帮助。

5. A: 你可不可以把中国驱逐舰的性能讲一讲?
B: 可以。一般地说, 驱逐舰的排水吨位有三千多吨, 吃水量四·六公尺。有四门一百三十毫米的火炮, 八门五十七毫米的火炮, 八门二十五毫米的火炮。此外还有导弹和火箭发射器。

6. A: 没有深水炸弹跟鱼雷吗?
B: 有深水炸弹, 可是没有鱼雷。

1. A: Jiěfàngjūnde sānge jūnzhǒng zhīzhōng kōngpà hǎijūn zuì ruò ba?
- B: Búcuò. Wǒmen méiyǒu dà jūnjiàn, xiàng hángkōngmǔjiàn, xúnyángjiàn, shénmede. Zuì dàde zhīyǒu sānqiānduōdūn.
- I suppose that of the three services of the Liberation Army, the Navy is the weakest.
- That's correct. We don't have any large warships, such as aircraft carriers, cruisers, etc. The largest (we have) is only over 3,000 tons.
2. A: Nǐmende hǎijūn yǒu shénme jiàntǐng?
- B: Yǒu qūzhújiàn, qiánshuǐtǐng, yúléitǐng, lièqiánjiàn, hùwèijiàn, dēnglùjiàn, dēnglùtǐng, xúnluótǐng gēn fūzhùjiàn. Fūzhùjiàn yě jiào fūzhùchuán, bāokuò yùnshūjiàn, yóuchuán, dēngdēng.
- What kind of ships and craft does your Navy have?
- We have destroyers, submarines, torpedo boats, submarine chasers, frigates, landing ships, landing craft, patrol boats, and auxiliary ships. Fūzhùjiàn are also known as fūzhùchuán, including transports, tankers, etc.
3. A: Yǒude rén shuō nǐmen hái yǒu dǎodàn kuàitǐng, bǐngqiě yǒude qūzhújiàn gēn qiánshuǐtǐng yǐjīng zhuāngbèile héwǔqì. Shì zhēnde ma?
- B: Shì zhēnde. Dànshi dírén bù xiān yòng héwǔqì gōngjī wǒmen, wǒmen búhuì yòng héwǔqì bàofù.
- Some people said you also have missile attack boats, and some of your destroyers and submarines have been equipped with nuclear weapons. Is it true?
- It's true. However, if the enemy doesn't use nuclear weapons to attack us first, we won't retaliate with nuclear weapons.
4. A: Nǐmende jiàntǐng shì zìjǐ shèjì, zìjǐ zàode háishi fāngzhào Sūlián jiàntǐng zàode?
- B: Dàbùfen shì zìjǐ shèjì, zìjǐ zàode. Bùxūyào wàiguó bāngzhù.
- Were your warships and craft designed and built by yourselves or were they built patterned after the Soviet ships and craft?
- Most of them were designed and built by ourselves. We have no need for foreign help.

5. A: Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ bǎ Zhōngguó
qūzhūjiàn de xīngnéng
jiǎngyìjiǎng?

Can you briefly describe the
characteristics of a Chinese
destroyer?

B: Kéyǐ. Yìbānde shuō, qūzhūjiàn
de páishuǐ dūnwèi yǒu sān-
qiānduōdūn, chīshuǐliàng
sìdiǎnliùgōngchǐ. Yǒu sìmén
yìbǎisānshíháomǐ de huǒpào,
bāmén wūshíqīháomǐ de huǒ-
pào, bāmén èrshíwǔháomǐ de
huǒpào. Cǐwài hái yǒu
dǎodàn hé huǒjiàn fāshèqì.

Sure. Generally speaking, a de-
stroyer has a displacement
tonnage of more than 3,000 tons
with a draft of 4.6 meters. It
has four 130-mm guns, eight 57-mm
guns and eight 25-mm guns. In
addition, it has guided missiles
and rocket launchers.

6. A: Méiyǒu shēnshuǐ zhàdàn gēn
yúléi ma?

Doesn't it have any depth charges
and torpedoes?

B: Yǒu shēnshuǐ zhàdàn, kěshì
méiyǒu yúléi.

It has depth charges, but no
torpedoes.

VOCABULARY

报 复	bàofù	to retaliate; retaliation
导 弹 快 艇	dǎodàn kuàitǐng	missile attack boat, fast attack craft-missile (C: sōu)
登 陆 舰	dēnglùjiàn	landing ship (C: sōu)
登 陆 艇	dēnglùtǐng	landing craft (C: sōu)
仿 照	fǎngzhào	patterned after
辅 助 舰 / 辅 助 船	fǔzhùjiàn / fǔzhùchuán	auxiliary ship (C: sōu)
攻 击	gōngjī	to attack; attack
航 空 母 舰	hángkōngmǔjiàn	aircraft carrier (C: sōu)
核 武 器	héwǔqì	nuclear weapon
火 箭 发 射 器	huǒjiàn fāshèqì	rocket launcher (naval) (C: zuò)
护 卫 舰	hùwèijiàn	frigate (C: sōu)
舰 艇	jiàntǐng	warships and craft
军 舰	jūnjiàn	warship (C: sōu)
猎 潜 舰	lièqiánjiàn	submarine chaser (C: sōu)
排 水 吨 位	páishuǐ dūnwèi	displacement tonnage
潜 水 艇	qiánshuǐtǐng	submarine (C: sōu)
驱 逐 舰	qūzhújiàn	destroyer (C: sōu)
深 水 炸 弹	shēnshuǐ zhàdàn	depth charge (C: kē)
巡 逻 艇	xúnlúotǐng	patrol boat (C: tiáo)
巡 洋 舰	xúnyángjiàn	cruiser (naval) (C: sōu)
油 船	yóuchuán	tanker, oiler (C: sōu)
鱼 雷	yúléi	torpedo (C: kē)
运 输 舰	yùnshūjiàn	transport (ship) (C: sōu)

造

zào

to build

之 中

zhīzhōng

amongst

STORY COMPREHENSION

小张的老家在上海乡下的一个人民公社里。这个公社附近的河很多。有的河很大，差不多有一、二公里宽；有的河很小，只有几十尺宽。他的家就在一条大河的河边儿上。小的时候，他常常站在河边儿上看那些大大小小在河上经过的船，心里很想到船上去玩。他时常要求他的父亲带他去坐船，他的父亲对他说，“等你长大，进了中学以后我再带你去吧。”到了一九六五年，小张进了公社中学的一年级，已经是十三岁的大孩子了，这年夏天，正好他父亲要坐船到上海去出差，就带小张一同去。在船上，他一直注意工作同志的操作，兴趣很大。他父亲发现儿子这么喜欢船上的工作，非常高兴，就告诉他，

Xiǎo Zhāng de lǎojiā zài Shànghǎi xiāngxià de yíge rénmín gōngshè lǐ. Zhège gōngshè fùjìn de hé hěnduō. Yǒude hé hěn dà, chàbuduō yǒu yī, èrgōnglǐ kuān; yǒude hé hěn xiǎo, zhǐyǒu jǐshíchǐ kuān. Tāde jiā jiù zài yìtiáo dàhé de hébiānrshang. xiǎode shíhou, tā chángcháng zhàn zài hébiānrshang kàn nàxiē dàdàxiǎoxiǎo zài héshang jīngguò de chuán, xīnlǐ hěn xiǎng dào chuánshang qù wán. Tā shícháng yāoqiú tāde fùqin dài tā qù zuò chuán, tāde fùqin duì tā shuō, "děng nǐ zhǎngdà, jìnle zhōngxué yǐhòu wǒ zài dài nǐ qù ba." Dào le Yījiūliùwǔnián, Xiǎo Zhāng jìnle gōngshè zhōngxué de yìniánjí, yǐjīng shì shísānsuì de dàháizi le, zhènián xiàtiān, zhènghǎo tā fùqin yào zuò chuán dào Shànghǎi qù chūchāi, jiù dài Xiǎo Zhāng yìtóngqù. Zài chuánshang, tā yìzhí zhùyì gōngzuò tóngzhì de cāozuò, xìngqù hěn dà. Tā fùqin fāxiàn érzi zhème xǐhuan chuánshangde

中学毕业以后，他就可以去海军服兵役。小张问父亲在船上工作跟在海军服兵役有什么不一样。父亲说，“在船上工作只能学习一般的操作技术。如果在海军服役，不但能学习操作舰艇，也能学习作战的技术和使用武器。这样，一方面可以作自己喜欢的工作，一方面可以担任保卫祖国的任务。”小张听了很高兴地说，“好极了！我将来一定要当海军。”父亲又说，“你的志愿很好，你知道我们是一个大的国家，可是我们一直没有注意海防。到了清朝末年，海防更弱。因为清朝政府把发展海军的钱用去造颐和园。帝国主义国家看到中国很弱，又没有海防，都来侵略我们。再加上反动派帮助外国来剥削、压迫中国，我们变成了一个非常穷的国家。一直到一九四九年新中国成立以

gōngzuò, fēicháng gāoxìng, jiù gāosu tā, zhōngxué bìyè yǐhòu, tā jiù keyì qù hǎijūn fú bīngyì. Xiǎo Zhāng wèn fùqin zài chuánshang gōngzuò gēn zài hǎijūn fú bīngyì yǒu shénme bù yíyàng. Fùqin shuō, "Zài chuánshang gōngzuò zhǐ néng xuéxí yìbānde cāozuò jìshù. Rúguǒ zài hǎijūn fúyì, búdàn néng xuéxí cāozuò jiàntǐng, yě néng xuéxí zuòzhàn de jìshù hé shǐyòng wǔqì. Zhèyàng, yìfāngmian keyì zuò zìjǐ xǐhuande gōngzuò, yìfāngmian keyì dānrèn bǎowèi zǔguó de rènwù." Xiǎo Zhāng tīngle hěn gāoxìngde shuō, "Hǎojíle! Wǒ jiānglái yídìng yào dāng hǎijūn." Fùqin yòu shuō, "Nǐde zhìyuàn hěn hǎo, nǐ zhīdao wǒmen shì yíge dàde guójiā, kěshi wǒmen yìzhí méiyǒu zhùyì hǎifáng. Dào le Chīngcháo mònián, hǎifáng gèng ruò. Yīnwei Qīngcháo zhèngfǔ bǎ fāzhǎn hǎijūn de qián yòngqù zào Yìhéyuán. Dìguó-zhùyì guójiā kàndào Zhōngguó hěn ruò, yòu méiyǒu hǎifáng, dōu lái qīnlüè wǒmen. Zài jiāshang fǎndòngpài bāng-zhù wàiguó lái bōxuē, yāpò Zhōngguó, wǒmen biànchéngle yíge fēicháng

后，在伟大的毛主席和周总理领导下，积极发展海军。我们现在已经可以自己制造防御性的舰艇了，可是这么多舰艇需要受过训练的年轻人来操作，才能保卫祖国。你既然长大以后希望当海军，我觉得非常高兴。”小张听了父亲说的中国海军的历史以后说，“我以前想在船上工作只是为了兴趣。现在觉得到海军去服兵役不但是兴趣，也是一种义务。”父亲接着说，“不过，当海军生活比较苦，使用的武器都非常贵，所以挑选青年的时候，体格检查一定要合格，学习水平要高，并且家庭成份要好才行。还有，在到海军去以前，最好已经是党员，所以你将来念高中以后，如果组织通知你入党你就马上办入党手续，对你以后在海军服役很有帮助。”小张看着父亲说，“我一定按照您

qióng de guójiā. Yìzhí dào Yījiǔ-sìjiǔnián xīn Zhōngguó chénglì yǐhòu, zài wěidàde Máo Zhǔxí hé Zhōu Zǒnglǐ lǐngdǎoxià, jījí fāzhǎn hǎijūn. Wǒmen xiànzài yǐjīng kényì zìjǐ zhìzào fāngyùxìngde jiàntǐng le, kěshì zhème duō jiàntǐng xūyào shòuguó xùnliànde niánqīngrén lái cāozuò, cái néng bǎowèi zǔguó. Nǐ jìrán zhǎngdà yǐhòu xīwàng dāng hǎijūn, wǒ juéde fēicháng gāoxìng." Xiǎo Zhāng tīngle fùqīn shuōde Zhōngguó hǎijūn de lìshǐ yǐhòu shuō, "Wǒ yǐqián xiǎng zài chuánshàng gōngzuò zhǐshì wèile xìngqu. Xiànzài juéde dào hǎijūn qù fú bīngyì búdàn shì xìngqu, yěshì yìzhǒng yìwù." Fùqīn jiēzhe shuō, "Búguò, dāng hǎijūn shēnghuó bǐjiào kǔ, shǐyòngde wǔqì dōu fēicháng guì, suóyì tiāoxuǎn qīngnián de shíhou, tǐgé jiǎnchá yídìng yào hégé, xuéxí shuǐpíng yào gāo, bìngqiě jiātíng chéngfèn yào hǎo cái xíng. Hǎiyǒu, zài dào hǎijūn qù yǐqián, zuìhǎo yǐjīng shì dǎngyuán, suóyì nǐ jiānglái niàn gāozhōng yǐhòu, rúguǒ zǔzhī tōngzhī nǐ rùdǎng, nǐ jiù mǎshàng bàn rùdǎng shǒuxù, duì nǐ yǐhòu

的意思努力去做。”

一九七〇年的夏天，小张高中毕业了，组织通知他入伍，先受海军基本训练，训练完了以后，他就被分派到一艘驱逐舰上去服兵役，任务是操作雷达。他服（兵）役的这艘驱逐舰是一九六五年中国自己制造的，速度很快、上边儿的火炮和装备都是最新式的。比方说，他操作的这个雷达的性能非常好，能很早就发现敌人的飞机，马上通知负责人，在敌人进攻以前先发射高射炮来摧毁他们。

小张学习的兴趣很高，工作很努力，在驱逐舰上不到一年，他不但知道怎么操作雷达也会保养。雷达发生故障的时候他也会修理。所以舰艇负责人常常在开会的时候把他的名字提出来，告诉其他的战

zài hǎijūn fúyì hěn yǒubāngzhù。”

Xiǎo Zhāng kànzhe fùqīn shuō, "Wǒ yídìng ànzhào nín de yìsī nǚlì qù zuò。”

Yījiūqīlíngnián de xiàtiān, Xiǎo Zhāng gāozhōng bìyè le, zǔzhī tōngzhī tā rùwǔ, xiān shòu hǎijūn jīběn xùnliàn, xùnliàn wánle yǐhòu, tā jiù bèi fēnpài dào yīsōu qūzhújiàn shang qù fú bīngyì, rènwù shì zāozuò léidá. Tā fú (bīng)yì de zhèsōu qūzhújiàn shì Yījiūliùwǔnián Zhōngguó zìjǐ zhìzàode, sùdù hěn kuài, shàngbianrde huǒpào hé zhuāngbèi dōu shì zuì xīnshìde. Bǐfāngshuō, tā cāozuòde zhège léidá de xìngnéng fēicháng hǎo, néng hěn zǎo jiù fāxiàn dírén de fēijī, mǎshang tōngzhī fùzérén, zài dírén jìngōng yǐqián xiān fāshè gāoshèpào lái cuīhuǐ tāmen.

Xiǎo Zhāng xuéxí de xìngqu hěn gāo, gōngzuò hěn nǚlì, zài qūzhújiàn shang bú dào yīnián, tā bú dàn zhī dào zěnme cāozuò léidá yě huì bǎoyǎng. Léidá fāshēng gùzhàng de shíhou tā yě huì xiūlǐ. Suǒyì jiāntǐng fùzérén chángcháng zài kāihuì de shíhou bǎ tāde míngzi tíchūlai, gàosu qítāde

士说，“张同志真是人民
解放军的好战士！”

zhànshì shuō, "Zhāng Tóngzhì zhēnshì
Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn de hǎo zhànshì!"

ENGLISH QUESTIONS

for

STORY COMPREHENSION

1. Where is "Little Zhang's" hometown?
2. What is near the People's Commune?
3. a. Are the rivers very wide?

b. How wide are they?
4. Why does "Little Zhang" often stand on the bank of the river?
5. What does "Little Zhang" wish to do someday?

6. Who took him on the trip?

7. What did he notice when he was on the boat?

8. Where did "Little Zhang's" father want him to go after he graduated from high school?

9. What question did "Little Zhang" ask his father?

10. What can you learn when you enlist in the Navy (3)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)

11. Why is it better to enlist in the Navy than to work on a boat (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

12. Why did the imperialist nations invade China in the past (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

13. What did "Little Zhang" say after he listened to his father's explanation (be specific)?

WAE, Unit 4

14. When did "Little Zhang" graduate from high school?

15. What did the "organization" assign "Little Zhang" to do?

16. Did "Little Zhang" go home as soon as he finished the training? Why?

17. What was his assignment on the destroyer?

18. a. Was the destroyer he served on purchased from a foreign country?

b. What year was it made?

19. What is said about (1) the speed and (2) the equipment of this destroyer?

(1)
(2)

20. How do we know that the radar "Little Zhang" operates is high in performance?

21. What did "Little Zhang" do immediately after he discovered the enemy airplane on radar?

22. How do they destroy the enemy aircraft?

23. Within his first year of service on the destroyer, what had he learned to do (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

24. What could "Little Zhang" do when the radar was out of order/developed a malfunction?

25. What did the ship's captain tell the other sailors at the meeting about "Little Zhang" (be specific)?

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. Where is "Little Zhang" hometown?
([People's] Commune in rural Shanghai [area])
2. What is near the People's Commune?
(Rivers)
3. a. Are the rivers very wide?
(Some are wide)
b. How wide are they?
(1 to 2 kilometers)
4. Why does "Little Zhang" often stand on the bank of the river?
(To watch the boats [passing to and fro])
5. What does "Little Zhang" wish to do someday?
(To travel by boat)
6. Who took him on the trip?
(His father)
7. What did he notice when he was on the boat?
(The crew at work)
8. Where did "Little Zhang's" father want him to go after he graduated from high school?
(Into the Navy)

WAE, Unit 4

9. What question did "Little Zhang" ask his father?
(The difference between working on a boat and serving in the Navy?)
10. What can you learn when you enlist in the Navy (3)?
 - (1) (Operations of warship)
 - (2) (Weapons)
 - (3) (Fighting skills)
11. Why is it better to enlist in the Navy than to work on a boat (2)?
 - (1) (Doing interesting work)
 - (2) (Defending the nation)
12. Why did the imperialist nations invade China in the past (2)?
 - (1) (Weak)
 - (2) (Had no coastal defense)
13. What did "Little Zhang" say after he listened to his father's explanation (be specific)?
(Serving in the Navy is both interesting and a duty)
14. When did "Little Zhang" graduate from high school?
([In] 1970)
15. What did the "organization" assign "Little Zhang" to do?
(Receive/undergo basic naval training)
16. Did "Little Zhang" go home as soon as he finished the training? Why?
(No, he was sent to [serve on] a destroyer)
17. What was his assignment on the destroyer?
(Operating the radar)

18. a. Was the destroyer he served on purchased from a foreign country?
(No [it was a Chinese-made destroyer])
- b. What year was it made?
(1965)
19. What is said about (1) the speed and (2) the equipment of this destroyer?
(1) (Fast speed)
(2) (Newest guns and equipment)
20. How do we know that the radar "Little Zhang" operates is high in performance?
(It can discover the enemy's [invading] planes very early [in their approach])
21. What did "Little Zhang" do immediately after he discovered the enemy airplane on radar?
(Notified the person in charge)
22. How do they destroy the enemy aircraft?
(Using antiaircraft guns [to destroy enemy aircraft])
23. Within his first year of service on the destroyer, what had he learned to do (2)?
(1) (The operation)
(2) (Maintenance of the radar)
24. What could "Little Zhang" do when the radar was out of order/developed a malfunction?
([He could] repair it)
25. What did the ship's captain tell the other sailors at the meeting about "Little Zhang" (be specific)?
(Comrade Zhang is a real warrior of the People's Liberation Army)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 一般地说，驱逐舰上应该装备哪些武器，才能在战时有效地攻击敌人？请讲一讲。

Yìbānde shuō, qūzhújiànshang yīnggāi zhuāngbèi nǎxiē wǔqì, cái néng zài zhànshí yǒuxiàode gōngjī dírén? Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng.

2. 听说航空母舰上装备了各种火炮，攻击和防御力量都很强。为什么在航行的时候还要驱逐舰、巡洋舰等等军舰来保护它？

Tīngshuō hángkōngmǔjiànshang zhuāngbèile gèzhǒng huǒpào, gōngjī hé fángyù lìliàng dōu hěn qiáng. Wèishénme zài hángxíng de shíhou hái yào qūzhújiàn, xúnyángjiàn děngděng jūnjiàn lái bǎohù tā?

3. 你在__部队服兵役的时候参加过作战演习吗？请说一说你使用过的两种武器和它们的性能。

Nǐ zài __ bùduì fú bīngyì de shíhou cānjiāguo zuòzhàn yǎnxí ma? Qǐng shuōyishuō nǐ shǐyòngguò de liǎngzhǒng wǔqì hé tāmen de xìngnéng.

4. 什么是“火箭发射器”？哪一种舰艇上一定得装备这种武器？为什么？

Shénme shì "huǒjiàn fāshèqì"? Nǎ yìzhǒng jiàntǐngshang yíding děi zhuāngbèi zhèzhǒng wǔqì? Wèishénme?

5. 听说美国跟苏联都有最新的核武器，而且都有非常强的报复力量。这对世界来说，是安全还是危险？请讲一讲。

Tīngshuō Měiguó gēn Sūlián dōu yǒu zuìxīnde héwǔqì, érqǐě dōu yǒu fēicháng qiángde bàofù lìliàng. Zhè duì shìjiè lái shuō, shì ānquán hái shì wēixiǎn? Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng.

6. 作战的时候，油船重要不重要？为什么？

Zuòzhàn de shíhou, yóuchuán zhòngyào búzhòngyào? Wèishénme?

7. 攻击潜水艇的时候，哪一种舰艇最有用？这种舰艇有什么攻击用的装备？

Gōngjī qiánshuǐtǐng de shíhou, nǎ yīzhǒng jiàntǐng zuì yǒuyòng?
Zhèzhǒng jiàntǐng yǒu shénme gōngjī yòngde zhuāngbèi?

8. 登陆舰跟登陆艇有什么不同？作战的时候，它们有什么任务？

Dēnglùjiàn gēn dēnglùtǐng yǒu shénme bùtóng? Zuòzhàn de shíhou, tāmen yǒu shénme rènwù?

9. 如果你是驱逐舰上的雷达操作员，你发现敌人的潜水艇以后，应该马上怎么作？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ shì qūzhújiànshàng de léidá cāozuòyuán, nǐ fāxiàn dírén de qiánshuǐtǐng yǐhòu, yīnggāi mǎshàng zěnmē zuò? Wèishénme?

10. 如果你在海军服兵役，你喜欢在哪一种舰艇上服务？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ zài hǎijūn fú bīngyì, nǐ xǐhuan zài nǎ yīzhǒng jiàntǐngshàng fúwù? Wèishénme?

11. 在作战的时候，海军在使用登陆艇以前，应该先由巡洋舰用火炮摧毁敌人的有生力量吗？为什么？

Zài zuòzhàn de shíhou, hǎijūn zài shǐyòng dēnglùtǐng yǐqián, yīnggāi xiān yóu xúnyángjiàn yòng huǒpào cuīhuǐ dírén de yǒushēng lìliang ma? Wèishénme?

12. 听说中国在1960年以前造的军舰都是仿造苏联的。现在大部分都是自己造的了。为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó zài Yījiǔliùlíngnián yǐqián zàode jūnjiàn dōu shì fǎngzào Sūlián de. Xiànzài dàbùfen dōu shì zìjǐ zàode le. Wèishénme?

13. 为什么战斗机可以在航空母舰上起飞跟降落？这些飞机的任务是什么？请说一说。

Wèishénme zhàndòujī kěyǐ zài hángkōngmǔjiànshàng qǐfēi gēn jiànguò? Zhèxiē fēiji de rènwù shì shénme? Qǐng shuōyīshuō.

14. 请讲一讲登陆艇在作战的时候，除了运输部队去打仗以外，还能运输什么武器？
Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng dēnglùtǐng zài zuòzhàn de shíhòu, chúle yùنشū bùduì qù dǎzhàng yǐwài, hái néng yùنشū shénme wǔqì?
15. 听说中国的海军目前还没有航空母舰。这是不是谣言？为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó de hǎijūn mùqián hái méiyǒu hángkōngmǔjiàn. Zhè shì búshì yáoyán? Wèishénme?
16. 一般地说，美国驱逐舰的排水吨位是多少？驱逐舰上都有些什么火炮？请说一说。
Yībānde shuō, Měiguó qūzhújiàn de páishuǐ dūnwèi shì duōshao? Qūzhújiànshàng dōu yǒuxiē shénme huǒpào? Qǐng shuōyishuō.
17. 运输舰的任务是什么？为什么在战时运输舰很有用？
Yùنشūjiàn de rènwù shì shénme? Wèishénme zài zhànshí yùنشūjiàn hěn yǒuyòng?
18. 听说现在世界上已经有很多国家有了核武器，这是不是很危险的事？为什么？
Tīngshuō xiànzài shìjièshàng yǐjīng yǒu hěnduō guójiā yǒule héwǔqì, zhè shì búshì hěn wēixiǎn de shì? Wèishénme?
19. 如果你在海军猎潜舰上当兵，你喜欢操作雷达高射炮还是担任发射深水炸弹的工作？为什么？
Rúguǒ nǐ zài hǎijūn lièqiánjiànshàng dāng bīng, nǐ xǐhuan cāozuò léidá gāoshèpào háishi dānrèn fāshè shēnshuǐ zhàdàn de gōngzuò? Wèishénme?
20. 请说一说巡逻艇平时的任务有哪些？上边儿装备了些什么武器？
Qǐng shuōyishuō xúnluótǐng píngshí de rènwù yǒu nǎxiē? Shàngbianr zhuāngbèile xiē shénme wǔqì?

21. 听说中国的三个军种之中海军最弱，而且也很少进行大规模的作战演习。请说一说为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde sānge jūnzhǒng zhīzhōng hǎijūn zuì ruò, érqǐě yě hěnsǎo jìnxíng dàguīmóde zuòzhàn yǎnxí. Qǐng shuōyīshuō wèishénme?

22. 听说中国共产党党中央为了实现四个现代化，特别着重抓海军舰艇跟装备的生产。为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó Gòngchǎndǎng Dǎngzhōngyāng wèile shíxiàn sìge xiàndàihuà, tèbié zhúzhòng zhuā hǎijūn jiàntǐng gēn zhuāngbèi de shēngchǎn. Wèishénme?

23. 请说一说驱逐舰、潜水艇、护卫舰和战斗机的任务跟它们的主要武器装备。

Qǐng shuōyīshuō qūzhújiàn, qiánshuǐtǐng, hùwèijiàn hé zhàn dòuji de rènwù gēn tāmen de zhǔyào wǔqì zhuāngbèi.

24. 据说现在的战斗机跟敌人的飞机作战的时候已经很少用机枪了，他们多半儿都使用空对空导弹。为什么？

Jùshuō xiànzài de zhàn dòuji gēn dírénde fēiji zhuòzhàn de shíhou yǐjīng hěnsǎo yòng jīqiāng le, tāmen duōbànr dōu shǐyòng kōngduìkōng dǎodàn. Wèishénme?

25. 听说中国人都说中国的武器跟其他的科技落后和四人帮的破坏有很大的关系。为什么？请你说一说。

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó rén dōu shuō Zhōngguóde wǔqì gēn qítāde kējì luòhòu hé sìrénbāng de pòhuài yǒu hěndàde guānxi. Wèishénme? Qǐng nǐ shuōyīshuō.

26. 中国的领导人常常说，中国的国防和科技搞上去以后，只发展防御性的武器，为什么？

Zhōngguóde lǐngdǎorén chángcháng shuō, Zhōngguóde guófáng hé kējì gǎoshàngqu yǐhòu, zhǐ fāzhǎn fángyùxìng de wǔqì, wèishénme?

27. 一般地说，海军中的舰艇，那一种的排水吨位最大？哪一种的速度最快？为什么会有这种特点？请讲一讲？
Yìbānde shuō, hǎijūnzhōng de jiàntǐng, nǎ yìzhǒng de páishuǐ dūnwèi zuì dà? Nǎ yìzhǒng de sùdù zuì kuài? Wèishénme huì yǒu zhèzhǒng tediǎn? Qǐng jiǎngyíjiǎng.
28. 听说中国北方的解放军和边防部队，除了各种大型的反坦克火炮以外，也装备了核武器，为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó běifāng de jiěfàngjūn hé biānfāng bùduì, chúle gèzhǒng dàxíngde fǎntǎnkè huǒpào yǐwài, yě zhuāngbèile héwǔqì, wèishénme?
29. 潜水艇在航行的时候怎么能够先知道附近有没有敌人的军舰？它怎么样防御或是攻击敌人？
Qiǎnshuǐtǐng zài hángxíng de shíhou zěnmē nénggou xiān zhīdao fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu dírén de jūnjiàn? Tā zěnmeyàng fángyù huòshi gōngjī dírén?
30. 听说中国的科技人员为了要发展一种重量轻、速度高的战斗机正在抓发动机的研究，为什么中国不再向外国买了呢？请说一说。
Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde kējì rényuán wèile yào fāzhǎn yìzhǒng zhòngliàng qīng, sùdù gāode zhàndòujī, zhèngzai zhuā fādòngjī de yánjiū, wèishénme Zhōngguó búzài xiàng wàiguó mǎile ne? Qǐng shuōyíshuō.

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. Do you think that China will build aircraft carriers in the future?
2. Previously most of our larger warships were patterned after those of the Soviet Union.
3. To the north of our submarine chaser there are two enemy destroyers attacking a landing craft.
4. The rocket launchers and depth charges that frigates are equipped with are used to attack the enemy's submarines.
5. I think the enemy will not retaliate for our missile attack boat's attack until tomorrow or the day after (tomorrow).
6. Of the nine torpedoes remaining on the submarine, two have malfunctioned and can't be used.

7. In addition to many relatively small warships and craft, the enemy also has two aircraft carriers and several cruisers in this vicinity.
8. The displacement of our newest frigate is over 4000 tons.
9. After the patrol boat discovered the enemy transport and landing ships, several destroyers were sent (dispatched) to attack them.
10. Aboard this aircraft carrier are both nuclear and ordinary weapons.
11. Of all of our auxiliary ships, about 20% are transports. (or: transports constitute about 20%)
12. Aircraft that take off and land on aircraft carriers need special equipment.
13. Is the malfunction in that rocket launcher already repaired?
14. In wartime, this kind of armed auxiliary ship can also carry out patrol, reconnaissance, etc., duties.

WAE, Unit 4

15. The radar equipment on a torpedo boat is comparatively simple; that on a cruiser is very complicated.
16. The displacement (tonnage) of most submarine chasers is under 500 tons.
17. A cruiser's firepower is of course greater than a destroyer's.
18. This unit's patrol boats normally patrol to the south.
19. This time when we attack a destroyer will cover.
20. From now on, when we send frigates there, an oiler will go along (accompany).
21. The displacement of this large type of oiler is even greater than that of a cruiser.
22. The enemy's nuclear weapons include depth charges and torpedoes.

WAE, Unit 4

23. In addition to 130mm guns, this destroyer has 57mm guns and 14.5mm machine guns.

24. This kind of comparatively small 400mm torpedo has a range of over 15 kilometers.

25. Among all of our warships and craft, only aircraft carriers have armor.

26. Among those three kinds of warships, frigates are the most numerous.

27. The tanks and self-propelled guns are already aboard the landing ship, but the personnel carriers haven't gone aboard yet.

28. This type of rocket launcher is eight rocket tubes connected together.

29. Tomorrow we've going on patrol for three days, so today we must carry out maintenance on various equipment.

30. The weapons on U.S. aircraft carriers are few. They only have a few guns.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Zhōngguó yǒu hé wǔqì, xìngnéng dōu fēicháng hǎo, dànshi Zhōngguó gēn dírén zuòzhàn de shíhou búhuì yòng zhèyàngde wǔqì. Rúguǒ dírén xiān yòng, nàme Zhōngguó yě yíding yòng hé wǔqì lái bàofù, bě dírén de zhèndì wánquán cuīhuǐ.
2. Wáng Tóngzhì, wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nǐ qǐngjiào yíxià. Fùzé xùnliàn de gānbù Zhāng Déshèng shuō zhǐyǒu xúnyángjiàn gēn hángkōngmǔjiàn cái yǒu shēnshuǐ zhādàn, bìngqiě hái shuō shēnshuǐ zhādàn shì yǒnglái gōngjī dírén qūzhújiàn de. Tā shuōde duì búduì?
3. Zài guòqù, wǒmende dàodànqiántǐng shì fāngzhào Sūlián zhìzào de. Yǒngle jīnián yǐhòu, fāxiàn suǐrán yǒu hǎode dìfang kěshì yě yǒu huàide dìfang. Hòulái Dǎngzhōngyāng jiào wǒmen zìjǐ shèjì, zìjǐ zhìzào. Jiéguǒ wǒmende xīn dàodànqiántǐng bǐ fāngzào wàiguóde hǎoduōle. Páishuǐ dùnwèi bǐ Sūlián de xiǎo, kěshì sùdù bǐ tā mende kuài.
4. Fǎndòngpài chángcháng shuō wǒmende kējì bùrú wàiguó, zuǐduō zhǐhuì zào yí, èrqiāndūn de chuán, kěshì wǒmen yǒu jǐjǐxīng, nǚlì yánjiū fāzhǎn, yíjīng zào le shíwǔ, liùsōu sìwànduōdūn de yóuchuán, měi yíge bùjiàn dōushì zìjǐ zhìzào de. Wǒ xiāngxìn shínián yǐhòu, wǒmen jiù kěyǐ zào yí, èrshíwàndūn de yóuchuán, kànkan nàshíhou fǎndòngpài hái néng shuō shénme.

5. Zài zhème duō de jiàntǐng zhǐzhōng, qūzhújiàn, qiánshuǐtǐng, yúléitǐng hé dàodàнкуàitǐng shì Zhōngguó hǎijūn de jīgàn. Wèishénme ne? Dìyī, zhèjǐzhōng jiàntǐng róngyì shèjì, yě róngyì zào, bìngqiě búguì. Èr, Zhōngguó shì yíge búyào qīnlüè biérén de guójiā, suóyì zàode zhèxiē jiàntǐng dōushi yònglai bǎowèi zǔguóde, búshì yònglai dào wàiguó qù gōngjī biérénde.

6. Yǒu rén yǐwéi Zhōngguó méiyǒu xún-yángjiàn gēn hángkōngmǔjiàn shì yīnwei Zhōngguóde kējì hái hěn luòhòu, búhuì zào. Wǒ kàn tāmen búzào de yuányīn shì Zhōngguó háishi xiāngdāng qióngde guójiā. Zào yīsōu hángkōngmǔjiàn de qián kéyì yònglai zào shíjīsōu dàodàнкуàitǐng, tāmen dāngrán búzào hángkōngmǔjiàn le.

7. Dēnglùjiàn hé dēnglùtǐng dōushi bùduì dēnglù shíhou xūyàode jiàntǐng. Lùjūn hé hǎijūnlùzhānduì dōu yòng zhèxiē jiàntǐng dēnglù. Kěshì wǒ bútai liǎojiě wèishénme Dǎngzhōngyāng bǎ dēnglùjiàn, dēnglùtǐng dōu jiāo gěi lùjūn bùduì, bù fēnpài yíbfēn gěi hǎijūnlùzhānduì. Wǒ juéde yīnggāi gěi lùjūn bǎifēnzhīqīshiwǔ, gěi hǎijūnlùzhānduì bǎifēnzhīèrshiwǔ.

8. Xúnluótǐng shì fùzé hǎifáng de hǎijūn bùduì yòngde, tāde sùdù kuài, róngyì gōngjī dírén, kěshì páishuǐ dūnwèi búgòu dà, bùnéng dào yuǎnde dìfang qù. Cǐwài, yě méiyǒu huǒjiàn fāshè ì gēn léidá, suóyì bùnéng gōngjī dírénde fēijī.

9. Wōmen cóngqiánde nàge fùzé gānbù shì Sīrénbāng pàilaide. Tā duì hǎijūn de jiàntǐng kényì shuō wánquán bùdǒng. Yǒu yìtiān tā wèn wǒ, hǎijūn yǐjīng yǒu hěnduō lièqiánjiàn le, wèishénme háiyào zào hùwèijiàn. Wǒ shuō zhè liǎngzhǒng jūnjiàn de xìngnéng bùtóng, rènwù yě bù yíyàng. Tā tīngle yǐhòu, hǎoxiàng bútài xìn wǒ shuōde huà, yòu qù wèn biéde tóngzhǐ.
10. Gè dānwèi de fùzé tóngzhǐ zuìhǎo chángcháng gēn gānbù kāihuī, gěi tāmen jīhuì shuōshuō tāmen de yìjiàn. Yàoshi dàbùfen de gānbù rènwéi nǐ gǎode hěnhǎo, nǐ yīnggāi xièxie tāmen de zhǐchí; yàoshi tāmen rènwéi nǐ gǎode bùhǎo, nǐ bù yīnggāi shēngqì, xiǎng zhǎo jīhuì bàofù, érshì yīnggāi xiǎngfāzi zhào tāmen de yìsī bǎ shìqing zuòde gènghǎo cáiduì.
11. Shēnshuǐ zhādàn shì yònglai cuīhuǐ dírén qiánshuǐtǐng de. Rúguǒ méiyǒu shēnshuǐ zhādàn, nǐ kényì yòng yúléi, yě hěn yǒuxiào. Kěshì bùnéng yòng huǒjiàn fāshèqì fāshè huǒjiàn, nà kě méi shénme yòngchù.
12. Fǔzhùchuán búshì yònglai zuòzhàn de jūnjiàn. Tā shì yònglai zhīyuán zuòzhàn de jūnjiàn de. Suóyì yǒude zhīyǒu hěnshǎode wǔqì, yǒude shénme wǔqì dōu méiyǒu. Yóuchuán gēn yùnshūjiàn dōushi zhè yílei de jūnjiàn. Hǎijūn rúguo méiyǒu zhèxiē fǔzhùchuán, jiù bùróngyì zuòzhàn le.

13. Wǒmen hùwèijiàn de páishuǐ dūnwèi búdà, zhǐyǒu yí, èrqiāndūn. Dànshi yǒu huǒpào hé huǒjiàn fāshèqǐ, yǒude hùwèijiàn háiyǒu dǎodàn gēn yúléi. Yòng zhèzhǒng jūnjiàn lái zuòzhàn, yíding kéyǐ cuīhuǐ qīnlüèzhě de jiàntǐng.
14. Wǒ shì lùjūn pàobīng duì lùjūnde huǒpào dāngrán shúxǐ. Rúguǒ nǐ wèn wǒ liúdàn pào de kǒujīng yǒu duō dà, pǎijīpào de shèchéng yǒu duō yuǎn dēngdēng, wǒ dōu kéyǐ gào su nǐ, kěshì bié wèn wǒ hǎijūn yòngde huǒpào huòshì jiàntǐng de xìngnéng.
15. Tīngshuō Jiěfàngjūn xiànzài yǒu yìzhǒng jiānóngpào, kǒujīng yǒu yìbǎi-liùshíduō háomǐ shèchéng zài sānshìgōnglǐ yǐshàng, wǒ bùzhīdao shì búshì yáoyán. Wǒ hái tīngshuō tāmen zhòngxíng tǎnkè de zhuāngjiǎ fēicháng hòu, bǐ Sūliánde yào hòude duō. Nǐ tīngshuōguò ma?

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate," because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 4

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Wáng Zhòngwēi and Commander Larson, an exchange officer from the U.S. Navy, are discussing the PRC Navy.

1. L: Can you tell me some of the history of the Chinese Navy?

W: 可以，可以。我们中国的海军是一九五〇年九月成立的，那个时候舰艇原来都是国民党的。我们的海军航空兵是一九五二年成立的。

Kéyi, kéyi. Wǒmen Zhōngguóde hǎijūn shì Yījiǔwǔlíngnián Jiǔyuè chénglìde, nàgè shíhòu jiàntǐng yuánlái dōu shì Guómíndǎng de. Wǒmende hǎijūn fāngkōngbīng shì Yījiǔwǔèrnián chénglì de.

2. L: I understand that the Soviet Union helped your Navy quite a bit in the 1950's. Is that correct?

W: 对。一九五四年到一九六〇年之间，苏联给了我们一些舰艇。他们还派人来帮助我们组织、训练。所以我们也把造船工业搞起来了。我们的造航工业特别抓怎么造中型、小型的舰艇，特别着重潜水艇。

Duì. Yījiǔwūsì dào Yījiǔliùlíngnián zhījiān, Sūlián gěile wǒmen yìxiē jiàntǐng. Tāmen hái pài rén lái bāngzhù wǒmen zǔzhī, xùnliàn. Suóyì wǒmen yě bǎ zào chuán gōngyè gǎoqǐlaile. Wǒmende zào chuán gōngyè tèbié zhuā zěnme zào zhōngxíng, xiǎoxíng de jiàntǐng, tèbié zhuózhòng qiánshuǐtǐng.

3. L: How large is the Chinese Navy compared to those navies of other countries?

W: 在数目上，除了苏联海军以外，中国海军的舰艇是世界上最多的。

Zài shù mù shàng, chú le Sūlián hǎijūn yǐwài, Zhōngguó hǎijūn de jiàntǐng shì shìjiè shàng zuì duō de.

4. L: What types of ships do you have in your surface force?

W: 除了驱逐舰和油船以外，其他的都是小型的舰艇。象导弹快艇、鱼雷艇、登陆艇、巡逻艇，等等。我们还有比较大的登陆舰、猎潜舰、辅助舰。新式的舰艇大部分是仿照苏联造的。

Chúle qūzhújiàn hé yóuchuán yǐwài, qítāde dōu shì xiǎoxíngde jiàn-tǐng. Xiàng dǎodànkùantǐng, yúléitǐng, dēnglùtǐng, xúnluótǐng dēngdēng. Wǒmen hái yǒu bǐjiào dà de dēnglùjiàn, lièqiánjiàn, fūzhùjiàn. Xīnshìde jiàntǐng dàbùfen shì fǎngzhào Sūlián zàode.

5. L: Does the Chinese Navy have any aircraft carriers?

W: 目前我们还没有航空母舰。可是计划在将来造八艘。实际上, 我们认为航空母舰不很重要。目前有没有并不要紧, 因为我们海军主要的任务是防卫海岸, 不是去进攻敌人。你们美国有多少航空母舰?

Mùqián wǒmen hái méiyǒu hángkōngmǔjiàn. Kěshì jìhuà zài jiānglái zào bā sōu. Shíjìshàng, wǒmen rènwéi hángkōngmǔjiàn bù hěn zhòngyào. Mùqián yǒu méiyǒu bìng bu yào jǐn, yīnwèi wǒmen hǎijūn zhǔyào de rènwù shì fǎngwèi hǎiàn, búshì qù jìngōng dírén. Nǐmen Měiguó yǒu duōshǎo hángkōngmǔjiàn?

6. L: My country has 13 aircraft carriers at the present time. Do you have any cruisers?

W: 我们最大的军舰只是驱逐舰。没有比驱逐舰更大的了。

Wǒmen zuìdàde jūnjiàn zhǐshì qūzhùjiàn. Méiyǒu bǐ qūzhùjiàn gèng dà de le.

7. L: I've heard that the Chinese Navy has a large number of submarines.

W: 虽然多可是还没有美国跟苏联那么多。我们的潜水艇也没有你们美国的那么新式。不过, 我们正在努力改良, 希望赶得上你们。

Suīrán duō kěshì hái méiyǒu Měiguó gēn Sūlián nàme duō. Wǒmende qiánshuǐtǐng yě méiyǒu nǐmen Měiguóde nàme xīnshì. Búguò, wǒmen zhèngzài nǔlì gǎiliáng, xīwàng gǎndeshàng nǐmen.

8. L: Submarines are an extremely important part of any navy, and on the other hand, it is important that a navy have strong antisubmarine capabilities.

W: 可不是吗! 带鱼雷的潜水艇可真是有用的武器。所以平常军舰的指战员都得会用深水炸弹, 这样才能消灭敌人的潜水艇。你想想要是一艘运输舰被鱼雷打中了, 有多少战士会被打死? 如果油船被鱼雷打中了, 那也很麻烦。

Kěbúshìma! Dài yúléi de qiánshuǐtǐng kě zhēnshì yǒuyòngde wǔqì. suóyì píngcháng jūnjiàn de zhǐzhànyuán dōu dǎi huì yòng shēnshuǐ-zhàdàn, zhèyàng cái néng xiǎomiè dírén de qiánshuǐtǐng. Nǐ xiǎng-xiǎng yàoshi yīsōu yùnshūjiàn bèi yúléi dǎzhòngle, yǒu duōshǎo zhànshì huì bèi dǎsǐ? Rúguǒ yóuchuán bèi yúléi dǎzhòngle, nà yě hěn máfan.

9. L: When do you use landing ships?

W: 我们的步兵从海上攻击的时候就用登陆舰、登陆艇。

Wǒmende bùbīng cóng hǎishàng gōngjī de shíhou jiù yòng dēnglùjiàn, dēnglùtǐng.

10. L: Do you have nuclear weapons on any of these ships?

W: 没有。目前我们的军舰都没有核武器。要是敌人先用核武器攻击我们，我们没有多大的力量报复。我忘了告诉你了，我们比较大一点儿的军舰都有火箭发射器。

Méiyǒu. Mùqián wǒmende jūnjiàn dōu méiyǒu hé wǔqì. Yàoshi dírén xiān yòng hé wǔqì gōngjī wǒmen, wǒmen méiyǒu duōdàde lìliang bàofù. Wǒ wàngle gàosu nǐ le, wǒmen bǐjiào dàyidiǎnrde jūnjiàn dōu yǒu huǒjiàn fāshèqì.

11. L: Let's eat lunch and talk some more about the Navy this afternoon.

W: 好！再见。

Hǎo! Zàijiàn.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Three naval officers have met to discuss the upcoming amphibious assault on a small island off the coast of China.

Role 1: Comrade Hu is in charge of the Marine assault forces. His units will require at least 60 landing craft and 8 landing ships in order to land all of the attack units and equipment within 12 hours. If the landing is not completed within 12 hours, he is afraid that the enemy may be able to retaliate against the transports and warships with their fighter planes, submarines, and missile attack boats. He also feels that the naval commander should assign frigates and destroyers, as well as fighters from the aircraft carrier to help destroy the enemy fortifications, tanks, and (man-made) terrain features which may interfere with the landing, as the Marine units probably will not be able to destroy them along.

Role 2: Comrade Zhou is the commander of the warships. He has only 50 landing craft available, and 10 landing ships. The landing ships are especially effective in landing equipment and tanks, but are poor for landing troops in the first assault landing, as they have no armor at all, and could easily be destroyed by the artillery fire of the coastal defense units. He must retain at least 25 percent of his destroyers and patrol boats, both to defend against enemy submarine attack and to collect intelligence information about the enemy warships. If they discover enemy warships and/or submarines, they will immediately attack the submarines with depth charges, and the other warships with gunfire and torpedoes. He is willing to assign one cruiser and three frigates to provide cover for the Marine landing assault.

Role 3: Comrade Wang is the commander of the aircraft carrier. Though he is willing to assign 15 fighter planes to attack the fortifications and tanks of the enemy coastal defense forces, he must use the remainder of his fighters and interceptors to protect the carrier, its oilers, and its auxiliary vessels. As the aircraft carrier has no antiaircraft guns, unless the warship commander will assign five-six additional frigates to protect it, he cannot assign more than 15 fighters to the Marine commander. He also insists that his best pilots must be assigned the mission of defending the carrier, and only his newest pilots and oldest fighters can be assigned to the Marines. He also wants five subchasers assigned to his command to defend the aircraft carrier against enemy submarine attack.

Scenario 2

Situation: Three naval officers have met to discuss the construction of new ships for the PRC Navy, and to decide on which particular type of ship construction emphasis should be placed.

Role 1: Comrade Gao feels strongly that the construction emphasis should be placed on patrol boats and missile attack boats. As the major responsibility of the Navy is patrolling and collecting intelligence information, he feels that new patrol boats should be patterned after those of the more advanced nations, and that all should have the newest radars and aircraft defense weapons, as well as the newest and most effective depth charges, rocket launchers, and torpedoes. He feels that, in this way, the patrol boats and missile attack boats would not only be very effective in collecting intelligence information, but could also destroy enemy submarines with their depth charges, warships with their missiles, and landing craft, tankers, and auxiliary ships with their torpedoes.

Role 2: Comrade Huang feels that emphasis should be placed on the construction of frigates and destroyers; not only are their weapons very fierce and effective, but the speed of the warships is very fast. Frigates and destroyers carry not only depth charges, torpedoes, and rocket launchers to destroy enemy warships, but can also fire nuclear weapons to retaliate against enemy aggression. They are very effective in protecting friendly warships, as well as in providing covering fire for amphibious attacks. Moreover, they can be built more quickly and more cheaply than cruisers and aircraft carriers.

Role 3: Comrade Tang feels that the emphasis should be placed on the building of new aircraft carriers. Although this type of warship is very expensive to build, the aircraft carrier is the backbone of the Navy's attack units. The aircraft assigned to the carrier can be used for all of the duties of the patrol and missile attack boats, and have much faster speeds and stronger weapons than any warship. Moreover, the new construction techniques mastered in the construction of a new carrier could be used to speed up the construction of new warships--if they can build a carrier, with its complex construction, they can build any type of warship needed. Moreover, aircraft carriers are very difficult to destroy, as they can attack the enemy at extreme ranges (distances), whereas the cruisers, frigates, etc., must be relatively close to the enemy in order to attack.

Scenario 3

Situation: A naval attack is planned against an enemy naval landing unit. Three officers have met to discuss the best methods of attack, as well as the organization of their attack forces.

Role 1: Comrade Song is the commander of 20 patrol/missile attack boats which have collected intelligence information about the enemy unit. The enemy has divided into two attack units, approximately 10 miles apart. The first enemy unit includes 1 aircraft carrier, 2 cruisers, 6 frigates, 12 destroyers, 3 tankers, and 2 auxiliary ships. The second enemy unit includes 2 frigates and 4 destroyers, as well as 10 landing ships, 15 transport ships, 8 tankers, and 8 auxiliary ships. He wants to immediately send all of his patrol/missile attack boats to attack and destroy the second group of enemy ships.

Role 2: Comrade Ma is the commander of the major PRC naval attack force, which consists of 1 cruiser, 8 frigates, 20 destroyers, and 25 submarines. He feels that the enemy's first attack unit must be destroyed immediately, and then the second enemy unit could be destroyed at their leisure. All warships, including those of Comrade Song, should be used in the attack in order to make it as effective as possible. The submarines and patrol boats should attack first, to be followed by the remainder of the warships. They must attack at daybreak, as their radar is so poor that a night attack would be ineffective. The main targets of the attack should be the enemy aircraft carrier and cruisers.

Role 3: Comrade Chen is the military representative of the Central Committee. Though he realizes that Ma is the commander, he feels that his political position gives him final authority to decide how to attack the enemy units. He feels that at least 15 of Song's patrol boats and all of Ma's submarines should attack the second enemy force at night in an attempt to make the enemy assign some of the warships from the first attack unit to protect those of the second attack unit. Also, he feels that there should be no losses in this attack, as the second enemy attack unit doesn't really have any effective defensive weapons. The main PRC force should attack the enemy warships assigned from the first enemy attack group to protect the second, and totally destroy them. Then both Ma's unit and Song's unit should make a coordinated attack against the first enemy attack unit the following morning.

UNIT 5

DIALOGUE

1. A: 驱逐舰的任务包括些什么?

B: 驱逐舰可以用来侦察、巡逻、护送其他的舰艇。此外, 还可以布雷、破坏敌人的船、用火炮轰击工事、支援自己的部队登陆、撤退。任务很多, 也很重要。

2. A: 你刚才说“布雷”。你是说布鱼雷吗?

B: 不是, 不是。布雷只意味着布水雷。用鱼雷的时候, 我们说发射鱼雷。

3. A: 驱逐舰的速度和续航力怎么样?

B: 速度每小时三十多节; 续航力大约三千到五千海里。

4. A: 听你讲了那些舰艇以后, 我觉得你们舰艇的种类好象不太多。

B: 我刚才就随便说了几种。其实不止那几种。我们还有用来扫雷的扫雷舰, 负责修理舰艇的修理舰, 什么的。

5. A: 你们用的声纳, 雷达、和其他的海军仪器也是自己制造吗?

B: 差不多都是自己造的。当然, 有的时候得向外国买, 可是不多。我们不能经常依靠外国供应装备。你说对不对?

6. A: 可不是吗! 哦, 你们没有大军舰, 怎么能攻击外国的海岸呢?

B: 中国海军的主要任务是保卫祖国的领海, 不是到很远的地方去打别人。我们的科技水平现在还不高, 得等赶上了先进国家以后才能造大军舰呢。

7. A: 你们两、三千吨的军舰都有反潜武器吗?

B: 不一定。比方说, 三千吨的坦克登陆舰就没有。

1. A: Qūzhújiànde rènwù bāokuò xiē shénme?
What are included in the duties of a destroyer?
- B: Qūzhújiàn kéyì yònglai zhēnchá, xúnluó, hùsòng qítāde jiāntǐng. Cǐwài, hái kéyì bù léi, pōhuài dírénde chuán, yòng huǒpào hōngjī gōngshì, zhīyuán zìjǐde bùduǐ dēng lù, chètūi. Rènwù hěn duō, yě hěn zhòngyào.
We can use a destroyer for reconnaissance and patrol and escorting other ships and craft. In addition, we can also use it to lay mines, destroy enemy ships, bombard fortifications with guns, and support our own troops to land or withdraw. There are many duties and they are very important.
2. A: Nǐ gāngcái shuō "bù léi". Nǐ shì shuō bù yúléi ma?
A moment ago you said lay mines. Did you mean to say laying torpedoes?
- B: Búshì, búshì. Bù léi zhǐ yìwèizhe bù shuǐléi. Yòng yúléi de shíhou, wǒmen shuō fāshè yúléi.
No, no. Bù léi only means "to lay mines." When we use torpedoes, we say "fire a torpedo."
3. A: Qūzhújiànde sùdù hé xùhánglǐ zěnmeyàng?
How is a destroyer's speed and cruising range?
- B: Sùdù měi xiǎoshí sānshiduōjié; xùhánglǐ dàyuē sānqiān dào wǔqiān hǎilǐ.
The speed is 30 and some knots per hour; cruising range is 3,000-5,000 nautical miles.
4. A: Tīng nǐ jiǎngle nèixiē jiàntǐng yǐhòu, wǒ juéde nǐmen jiàntǐngde zhōnglèi hǎoxiàng bútài duō.
After hearing what you said about those ships and craft, I have a feeling that your ships don't seem to have a large variety.
- B: Wǒ gāngcái jiù suíbiàn shuōle jǐzhǒng. Qíshí bùzhǐ nèi jǐzhǒng. Wǒmen hái yǒu yònglai sǎo léi de sāoléijiàn, fùzé xiūlǐ jiàntǐng de xiūlǐjiàn, shénmede.
A while ago I just mentioned a few off the top of my head. Actually, the variety isn't limited to just those few types. We also have minesweepers for minesweeping, repair ships for repairing ships and craft, etc.

5. A: Nǐmen yǒngde shēngnà, léidá,
hé qítāde hǎijūn yíqì yě
shì zìjǐ zàode ma? Are your sonar, radar, and other
naval instruments domestically
built?
- B: Chābùduō dōu shì zìjǐ zàode.
Dāngrán, yǒude shíhou děi
xiàng wàiguó mǎi, kěshì
bùduō. Wǒmen bùnéng jǐng-
cháng yìkào wàiguó gōngyìng
zhuāngbēi. Nǐ shuō duì
buduì. Almost all of them are made by
ourselves. Of course, sometimes
we have to buy from abroad. But
there aren't many. We can't
constantly rely on foreign
countries to supply equipment.
Do you agree?
6. A: Kě búshì ma! O, nǐmen méiyǒu
dà jūnjiàn, zěnméi néng
gōngjǐ wàiguóde hǎiàn ne? I can't agree with you more. By
the way, since you don't have
any large warships, how can you
attack a foreign enemy's seacoast?
- B: Zhōngguó hǎijūnde zhǔyào rènwù
shì bǎowèi zǔguó de lǐnghái,
búshì dào hěn yuǎnde dìfang
qù dǎ biéren. Wǒmen de kējì
shuǐpíng xiànzài hǎi bùgāo,
děi děng gǎnshàngle xiānjìn
guójiā yǐhòu cái néng zào dà
jūnjiàn ne. The main duty of China's Navy is
to defend the territorial waters
of the fatherland, not to attack
someone at a faraway place. The
level of our science and tech-
nology isn't high enough at
present. We can't build any
large warships until after we've
caught up with the advanced
nations.
7. A: Nǐmen liǎngsānqiāndūn de jūn-
jiàn dōu yǒu fǎnqián wǔqì ma? Do all of your 2 or 3,000-ton
warships have antisubmarine
weapons?
- B: Bùyídìng. Bǐfāngshuō, sānqiān
dūn de tǎnkèdēnglùjiàn jiù
méiyǒu. Not all of them. For instance,
a 3,000-ton LST doesn't have
any.

VOCABULARY

布 雷	bùléi	to lay mines
不 止	bùzhǐ	not limited to, more than
撤 退	chètuì	to withdraw, to evacuate (people)
登 陆	dēnglù	to land (mil.)
反 潜 武 器	fǎnqián wǔqì	antisubmarine weapons
供 应	gōngyìng	to supply
海 岸	hǎi'àn	seacoast
海 哩	hǎilǐ	nautical miles
轰 击	hōngjī	to bombard, to shell
护 送	hùsòng	to escort
节	jié	knots (nautical counterword for speed)
领 海	lǐnghǎi	territorial waters
其 实	qíshí	actually, as a matter of fact
扫 雷	sǎo léi	to sweep mines (naval)
扫 雷 舰	sǎoléijiàn	minesweeper (C: sōu)
声 纳	shēngnà	sonar
水 雷	shuǐléi	mines (naval) (C: kē)
坦 克 登 陆 舰	tǎnkè dēnglùjiàn	landing ship, tank (LST)
续 航 力	xùhánglì	endurance (cruising range) (naval)
修 理 舰	xiūlǐjiàn	repair ship (C: sōu)
依 靠	yīkào	to rely on
仪 器	yíqì	instrument (pertaining to science and technology)

支 援

zhīyuán

to support (mil.); support (mil.)

种 类

zhǒnglèi

kinds, variety

STORY COMPREHENSION

小赵七、八岁的时候就希望长大以后可以当海军。到了十八岁，中学快毕业那年，接到参军的通知叫他十二月十五号到广州城外边儿的海军训练中心去检查体格。通知上说，如果体格检查以后合格当海军，组织就会再通知他在第二年的二月十五号去接受三个月的入伍训练。受完了这三个月的基本训练以后，党委开会，按照他受训的成绩，家庭成分等等条件来决定他应该去的兵种或是军舰服兵役。不过，要是他的体格检查不合格，就不可以到海军去；他得到人民公社附近的民兵训练中心去报到。

小赵去检查体格以后，不到十天，又接到一份通

Xiǎo Zhào qī, bāsuì de shíhòu jiù xīwang zhǎngdà yǐhòu kéyǐ dāng hǎijūn. Dào le shíbāsuì, zhōngxué kuài bìyè nànián, jiēdào cānjūn de tōngzhī jiào tā Shíèryuè shíwǔhào dào Guǎngzhōu chéng wànbianr de Hǎijūn xùnlìan Zhōngxīn qù jiǎnchá tǐgé. Tōngzhīshang shuō, rúguǒ tǐgé jiǎnchá yǐhòu hégé dāng hǎijūn, zǔzhī jiù huì zài tōngzhī tā zài èrnián de èryuè shíwǔhào qù jiēshòu sāngē yuè de rùwǔ xùnlìan. Shòuwánle zhè sāngē yuè de jīběn xùnlìan yǐhòu, dǎngwěi kāihuì, ànzhào tā shòuxùn de chéngjī, jiātíng chéngfèn dēngdēng tiáojiàn lái juédìng tā yīnggāi qù de bīngzhǒng huòshì jūnjiàn fú bīngyì. Búguò, yàoshi tāde tǐgé jiǎnchá bùhége, jiù bùkěyǐ dào hǎijūn qù; tā děi dào rénmín gōngshè fùjìn de mínbīng xùnlìan zhōngxīn qù bàodào.

Xiǎo Zhào qù jiǎnchá tǐgé yǐhòu, bú dào shítiān, yòu jiēdào yí fèn

知说他的体格检查不但合格了，并且适合在军舰上工作。他非常高兴，所以他报到入伍以后，学习很努力，工作也很有积极性，又很愿意帮助学习有困难的同志。干部都很喜欢他。基本训练快要完了的时候，组织特别许他挑选喜欢去的兵种，他就挑选了在驱逐舰上操作雷达的工作。正好那个时期中国自己制造了十几艘新型驱逐舰，需要很多搞情报的雷达操作人员，组织就派小赵到一〇二号驱逐舰上去服务。

小赵在驱逐舰上担任操作雷达的任务很快地就满了一年了。他很喜欢这个工作，也很喜欢在舰艇上一起工作的战士，特别是那三个住在一个房间的好朋友；小王、小钱和小李。这几个人都是从中国不同的地区分派来的，每

tōngzhī shuō tāde tǐgé jiǎnchá búàn
hégele, bìngqiě shìhé zài jūnjiàn-
shàng gōngzuò. Tā fēicháng gāoxìng,
suóyì tā bàodào rùwǔ yǐhòu, xuéxí
hěn nǔlì, gōngzuò yě hěn yǒu jījíxìng,
yòu hěn yuànyì bāngzhù xuéxí yǒu
kùnnànde tóngzhì. Gàn bù dōu hěn
xǐhuan tā. Jīběn xùnliàn kuài yào
wánle de shíhòu, zǔzhǐ tèbié xǔ tā
tiāoxuǎn xǐhuan qù de bīngzhǒng, tā
jiù tiāoxuǎnle zài qūzhújiànshàng
cāozuò léidá de gōngzuò. Zhènghǎo
nàge shíqī Zhōngguó zìjǐ zhìzào le
shíjǐsōu xīnxíng qūzhújiàn, xūyào
hěnduō gāo qíngbào de léidá cāozuò
rényuán, zǔzhǐ jiù pài Xiǎo Zhào
dào Yī-líng-èrhào qūzhújiànshàng qù
fúwù.

Xiǎo Zhào zài qūzhújiànshàng
dānrèn cāozuò léidá de rènwù hěn-
kuàide jiù mǎnle yìnián le. Tā hěn
xǐhuan zhège gōngzuò, yě hěn xǐhuan
zài jiàntǐngshàng yìqǐ gōngzuò de
zhànshì, tèbié shì nà sānge zhùzài
yíge fángjiān de hǎo péngyou; Xiǎo
Wáng, Xiǎo Qián hé Xiǎo Lǐ. Zhè jǐge
rén dōu shì cóng Zhōngguó bùtóngde

个人在舰艇上的任务也不同。比方说，小王是负责操作声纳仪器的，在平时他需要自己保养这套仪器，作战以前他还得再检查一次，所以他的仪器一直没发生过毛病。小钱负责高射炮射击，他有一个同志帮助他操作并且负责炮弹的供应。小李呢？他负责发射深水炸弹。小赵和这三个人除了工作不在一个房间以外，经常在工作完了的时候谈谈当兵以前的生活。比方说，他们在哪儿念的中学、家里父母还在不在、当兵以前有没有爱人或是女朋友什么的。大家都觉得很高兴。一般地说，他们的家庭情形差不多，除了小李的父亲是下中农以外，其他的人都是从贫农家庭来的。解放以前都受过地主的压迫，生活苦极了。现在大家为祖国的军队服务，吃得饱、穿得好，父母亲和爱人在

dìqū fēnpài lái de, měige rén zài
jiàntǐngshàng de rènwù yě bùtóng.
Bǐfang shuō; Xiǎo Wáng shì fùzé
cāozuò shēngnà yíqì de, zài píngshí
tā xūyào zìjǐ bǎoyǎng zhètào yíqì,
zuòzhàn yǐqián tā hái děi zài jiǎnchá
yíqì, suǒyǐ tāde yíqì yìzhí méi fā-
shēngguo máobìng. Xiǎo Qián fùzé
gāoshèpào shèjī, tā yǒu yíge tóngzhì
bāngzhù tā cāozuò bìngqiě fùzé pàodàn
de gōngyìng. Xiǎo Lǐ ne? Tā fùzé
fāshè shēnshuǐ zhàdàn. Xiǎo Zhào hé
zhè sānge rén chule gōngzuò búzài
yíge fángjiān yǐwài, jīngcháng zài
gōngzuò wánle de shíhou tántan dāng-
bīng yǐqián de shēnghuó. Bǐfang shuō,
tāmen zài nǎr niànde zhōngxué, jiāli
fùmǔ hái zài búzài, dāngbīng yǐqián
yǒu méiyǒu àiren huòshi nǚ péngyou
shénmede. Dàjiā dōu juéde hěn gāo-
xìng. Yībānde shuō, tāmen de jiātíng
qíngxíng chàbuduō, chule Xiǎo Lǐ de
fùqīn shì xiàzhōngnóng yǐwài, qítāde
rén dōu shì cóng pínóng jiātíng
lái de. Jiěfàng yǐqián dōu shòuguó
dìzhǔ de yāpò, shēnghuó kǔjīle.
Xiànzài dàjiā wèi zǔguó de jūnduì

家都受到党的照顾。他们觉得不但应该努力学习操练武器把任务搞好，而且在晚上有工夫的时候应该自动研究马列主义及毛主席的著作才能变成一个标准的解放军战士。

小赵服兵役的驱逐舰常常抓演习，所以舰艇上的指战员对自己的任务都非常清楚。有一次，他们的军舰在中国海岸外巡逻，小赵看见雷达上有几个黑点，知道这是雷达发现敌人的飞机来偷袭了，马上用电话告诉负责人，负责人接到这个情报以后，很快地通知小钱，叫他们作好射击准备。就在这个时候，小王的声纳仪器也发现了敌人的潜水艇，他马上告诉负责人，负责人一方面叫小李他们把深水炸弹准备好，一方面通知附近的猎潜舰预备反潜武器，他

fúwù, chīde bǎo, chuānde hǎo, fùmǔqīn
hé àiren zài jiā dōu shòudào dǎngde
zhàogù. Tāmen juéde búdàn yīngāi
nǚlì xuéxí cāoliàn wǔqì bǎ rènwù gǎo
hǎo, érqǐě zài wǎnshang yǒu gōngfu
de shíhou yīngāi zìdòng yánjiū
Mǎ-Liè zhǔyì jí Máo Zhǔxí de zhùzuò
cái néng biànchéng yíge biāozhǔn de
Jiěfàngjūn zhànshì.

Xiǎo Zhào fú bīngyì de qūzhújiàn
chángcháng zhuā yǎnxí, suóyì jiànting
shangde zhǐzhànyuán duì zìjǐde rènwù
dōu fēicháng qīngchu. Yǒu yíci,
tāmende jūnjiàn zài Zhōngguó hǎiàn
wài xúnluó, Xiǎo Zhào kànjian léidá
shang yǒu jǐge hēidiǎn, zhīdao zhè
shì léidá fāxiàn dírénde fēijī lái
tōuxí le, mǎshang yòng diànhuà gàosu
fùzérén, fùzérén jiēdào zhège qíngbào
yǐhòu, hēnkuàide tōngzhǐ Xiǎo Qián,
jiào tāmen zuòhǎo shèjǐ zhǔnbèi.
Jiù zài zhège shíhou, Xiǎo Wáng de
shēngnà yíqì yě fāxiànle dírén de
qiánshuǐtǐng, tā mǎshang gàosu fùzérén,
fùzérén yìfāngmian jiào Xiǎo Lǐ
tāmen bǎ shēnshuǐ zhàdàn zhǔnbèi hǎo,
yìfāngmian tōngzhǐ fùjìn de lièqián-

又通知二十哩外的航空母舰派飞机来支援。五分钟以后，敌人的飞机真的来了。负责人马上通知小钱他们开始瞄准射击，并且叫小李他们发射深水炸弹。经过了二十多分钟的轰击，在我们的航空母舰和猎潜舰开到以前，敌人的飞机都被打下来了，潜水艇也被深水炸弹摧毁了。

这次敌人的偷袭因为驱逐舰上的指战员配合得非常好，所以前后不到半个钟头就把敌人的飞机和潜水艇摧毁，也把敌人都杀死了。

jiàn yùbèi fǎnqiǎn wǔqī, tā yòu tōngzhī èrshílǐ wài de hángkōng mǔjiàn pài fēijī lái zhīyuán. Wǔfēnzhōng yǐhòu, dírén de fēijī zhēnde lái le. Fùzérén mǎshàng tōngzhī Xiǎo Qián tāmen kāishǐ miáozhǔn shèjī, bìngqiě jiào Xiǎo Lǐ tāmen fāshè shēnshuǐ zhàdàn. Jīngguòle èrshíduōfēn zhōng de hōngjī, zài wǒmen de hángkōng mǔjiàn hé lièqiánjiàn kāidào yǐqián, dírén de fēijī dōu bèi dǎxiàlai le, qiánshuǐtǐng yě bèi shēnshuǐ zhàdàn cuīhuǐ le.

Zhècì dírén de tōuxí yīnwèi qūzhújiàn shàngde zhǐzhànyuán pèihé de fēicháng hǎo, suóyì qiánhòu bú dào bàn ge zhōngtóu jiù bǎ dírén de fēijī hé qiánshuǐtǐng cuīhuǐ, yě bǎ dírén dōu shā sǐ le.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS

for

STORY COMPREHENSION

1. When did Xiao Zhao begin to hope serving in the Navy?
2. Where did Xiao Zhao report in Guangzhou for his physical examination?
3. When would he report for basic training if he passed the physical examination?
4. If Xiao Zhao had failed to pass his physical examination, where would he have reported to?
5. When did Xiao Zhao get the notice to join the Armed Forces?
6. Why did the "organization" let Xiao Zhao choose the arm of service (3)?

7. What assignment did Xiao Zhao have on the destroyer?
8. How long has he worked on the destroyer already?
9. How did he feel about (1) his duties and (2) the comrades he worked with?
10. Where did the other three sailors come from?
11. What was Xiao Wang's assignment?
12. What was Xiao Qian's assignment?
13. What was Xiao Li's assignment?
14. What did Xiao Zhao and his comrades do after work?

15. What was Xiao Zhao's family background before Liberation?

16. Why was Xiao Zhao satisfied with the life in the Navy (give 3 of 4 possible)?

17. When did Xiao Zhao see the blips on radar?

18. What was Xiao Zhao's conclusion when he saw the blips?

19. What did the ship's captain do when he received the information that enemy airplanes were coming?

20.
 - a. What information did Xiao Wang get from the sonar?
 - b. What did he do?

21. What did the ship's captain ask the submarine chaser to do?

22. What did the ship's captain ask the aircraft carrier to do?

WAE, Unit 5

23.
 - a. How long did it take the enemy airplanes to arrive?
 - b. What did the captain do?

24. How long did the battle last between Xiao Zhao's destroyer and the enemy?

25. What was the outcome of this battle?

STORY COMPREHENSION
Answers to Questions

1. When did Xiao Zhao begin to hope serving in the Navy?
(At seven or eight years of age)
2. Where did Xiao Zhao report in Guangzhou for his physical examination?
(Navy training center)
3. When would he report for basic training if he passed the physical examination?
(On January 15 of the coming year)
4. If Xiao Zhao had failed to pass his physical examination, where would he have reported to?
(Militia training center)
5. When did Xiao Zhao get the notice to join the Armed Force?
(Within ten days after the physical examination)
6. What did the "organization" let Xiao Zhao choose the arm of service (3)?
(Because he (1) studied diligently, (2) worked hard, and (3) helped comrades [who had difficulty in learning])
7. What assignment did Xiao Zhao have on the destroyer?
(Radar operation)
8. How long has he worked on the destroyer already?
(One year)

WAE, Unit 5

9. How did he feel about (1) his duties and (2) the comrades he worked with?

(He liked 1. both his duties [work], and 2. the comrades he worked with)

10. Where did the other three sailors come from?

(Different areas in China)

11. What was Xiao Wang's assignment?

(Sonar instrument operation)

12. What was Xiao Qian's assignment?

(Antiaircraft gun operation [gunner])

13. What was Xiao Li's assignment?

(Firing depth charges)

14. What did Xiao Zhao and his comrades do after work?

(Talk about their life before enlistment)

15. What was Xiao Zhao's family background before Liberation?

(Poor peasants)

16. Why was Xiao Zhao satisfied with the life in the Navy (give 3 of 4 possible)?

(1. Serving in Liberation Army of the fatherland, 2. enough food to eat, 3. good clothes to wear, and 4. parents and wives were taken care of by the Party)

17. When did Xiao Zhao see the blips on radar?

(While patrolling off the seacoast)

WAE, Unit 5

18. What was Xiao Zhao's conclusion when he saw the blips?
(Enemy aircraft coming to raid [them])

19. What did the ship's captain do when he received the information that enemy's airplanes were coming?
(Gave orders to complete fire preparations)

20. a. What information did Xiao Wang get from the sonar?
b. What did he do?
(a. Discovered an enemy submarine)
(b. Notified the person in charge [of the destroyer])

21. What did the ship's captain ask the submarine chaser to do?
(To prepare the antisubmarine weapons)

22. What did the ship's captain ask the aircraft carrier to do?
(To send airplanes for support)

23. a. How long did it take the enemy airplanes to arrive?
b. What did the captain do?
(a. Five minutes)
(b. Notified Xiao Qian to begin firing [AA gun] and Li to begin firing)

24. How long did the battle last between Xiao Zhao's destroyer and the enemy?
(More than 20 minutes)

25. What was the outcome of this battle?
([The enemy were killed and] their airplanes and submarines were destroyed)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 请说一说为什么海军在登陆以前，先由大型军舰轰击敌人的海岸？

Qǐng shuōyishuō wèishénme hǎijūn zài dēnglù yǐqián, xiān yóu dàxíng jūnjiàn hōngjī dírén de hǎiàn?

2. 在敌人的海岸上登陆应该使用哪一种舰艇最有效？为什么？

Zài dírén de hǎiànshàng dēnglù yīnggāi shǐyòng nǎ yīzhǒng jiàntǐng zuìyǒuxiào? Wèishénme?

3. 一般地说，在什么情况下需要布雷？哪一种军舰担任布雷的任务？

Yībānde shuō, zài shénme qíngkuàngxià xūyào bùléi? Nǎ yīzhǒng jūnjiàn dānrèn bùléi de rènwù?

4. 海军的修理舰应该跟着其他的军舰一起去作战吗？为什么？

Hǎijūn de xiūlǐjiàn yīnggāi gēnzhe qítāde jūnjiàn yìqǐ qù zuòzhàn ma? Wèishénme?

5. 是驱逐舰，还是运输舰担任护送航空母舰的任务？为什么？

Shì qūzhújiàn, háishi yùnshūjiàn dānrèn hùsòng hángkōngmǔjiàn de rènwù? Wèishénme?

6. 听说中国的海军研究人员现在抓科技，主要是想把军舰的航行速度和续航力搞上去，请说一说为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde hǎijūn yánjiū rényuán xiànzài zhuā kējì, zhǔyào shì xiǎng bǎ jūnjiàn de hángxíng sùdù hé xùhánglì gǎoshàngu, qǐng shuōyishuō wèishénme?

7. 听说中国实现四个现代化，在发展国防的时候，特别着重舰艇的制造。为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó shíxiàn sìge xiàndàihuà, zài fāzhǎn guófáng de shíhou, tèbié zhuózhòng jiàntǐng de zhìzào. Wèishénme?
8. 作战的时候，后勤部队重要吗？请讲一讲海军有哪些舰艇在作战的时候担任后勤工作？为什么？
Zuòzhàn de shíhou, hòuqín bùduì zhòngyào ma? Qǐng jiǎngyíjiǎng hǎijūn yǒu nǎxiē jiàntǐng zài zuòzhàn de shíhou dānrèn hòuqín gōngzuò? Wèishénme?
9. 什么是声纳？这种仪器在军事上有什么用？
Shénme shì shēngnà? Zhèzhǒng yíqì zài jūnshìshàng yǒu shénme yòng?
10. 一般地说，美国生产的坦克登陆舰一次可以运输多少辆重型坦克或是轻型坦克？这种军舰在什么时候使用最有效？
Yìbānde shuō, Měiguó shēngchǎn de tǎnkè dēnglùjiàn yíci kěyǐ yùnsū duōshaoliàng zhòngxíng tǎnkè huòshì qīngxíng tǎnkè? Zhèzhǒng jūnjiàn zài shénme shíhou shǐyòng zuìyǒuxiào?
11. 请说一说美国海军里边儿哪一种军舰的续航力最长，哪一种最短？为什么？
Qǐng shuōyíshuō Měiguó hǎijūn lǐbiānr nǎ yízhǒng jūnjiàn de xùhánglì zuì cháng, nǎ yízhǒng zuì duǎn? Wèishénme?
12. 中国海军在3,000吨以下的舰艇，除了驱逐舰以外还有别的舰艇吗？请你说一说。
Zhōngguó hǎijūn zài 3,000 dūn yǐxià de jiàntǐng, chúle qūzhújiàn yǐwài hái yǒu biéde jiàntǐng ma? Qǐng nǐ shuōyíshuō.
13. 要是敌人在我们的海岸外布了很多水雷，我们海军应该怎么办？
Yàoshi dírén zài wǒmende hǎiànwài bùle hěnduō shuǐléi, wǒmen hǎijūn yīnggāi zěnmebàn?

14. 为什么中国不愿意长时期依靠进口的武器？
Wèishénme Zhōngguó búyuànyì cháng shíqī yīkào jìnkǒude wǔqì?
15. 帮助部队撤退的时候，哪几种军舰最有用？为什么？
Bāngzhù bùduì chètùi de shíhou, nǎ jǐzhǒng jūnjiàn zuì yǒuyòng?
Wèishénme?
16. 海军在进行登陆战的时候，哪几种舰艇担任补给工作？为什么？
Hǎijūn zài jìnxíng dēnglùzhàn de shíhou, nǎ jǐzhǒng jiàntǐng dānrèn bǔjǐ gōngzuò? Wèishénme?
17. 听说在 1949 年反动派在中国主要的海岸外布了很多水雷，中国海军不能够自由进出领海，为什么？
Tīngshuō zài Yījiūsìjiūnián fǎndòngpài zài Zhōngguó zhǔyàode hǎiànwài bùle hěnduō shuǐléi, Zhōngguó hǎijūn bùnénggou zìyóu jìrchū lǐnghǎi.
Wèishénme?
18. 一般地说，哪一种军舰的排水吨位最大？为什么？
Yìbānde shuō, nǎ yīzhǒng jūnjiàn de páishuǐ dūnwèi zuì dà? Wèishénme?
19. 听说中国在发展国防武器的时候，并不着重制造航空母舰，而是着重大量生产导弹快艇等等小型舰艇，为什么？
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó zài fāzhǎn guófáng wǔqì de shíhou, bìngbù zhuózhòng zhìzào hángkōngmǔjiàn, érshì zhuózhòng dàliàng shēngchǎn dǎodàn kuàitǐng děngděng xiǎoxíng jiàntǐng, wèishénme?
20. 进攻敌人阵地和工事以前应该先用哪几种武器跟火炮来摧毁他们的有生力量？为什么？
Jìngōng dírén zhèndì hé gōngshì yǐqián yīnggāi xiān yòng nǎ jǐzhǒng wǔqì gēn huǒpào lái cuīhuǐ tāmen de yǒushēng lìliang? Wèishénme?
21. 请说一说为什么党中央只挑选参加共产党的科技人员来研究发展核子弹？
Qǐng shuōyishuō wèishénme dǎngzhōngyāng zhǐ tiāoxuǎn cānjiā gōngchǎndǎng de kējì rényuán lái yánjiū fāzhǎn hézǐdàn?

22. 听说中国猎潜舰的最大速度每小时只有 20 节还赶不上先进国家的水平。这是不是谣言？为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó lièqiánjiàn de zuìdà sùdù měi xiǎoshí zhǐyǒu èrshíjié hái gǎnbushang xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng. Zhè shì bushi yáoyán? Wèishénme?

23. 一般地说海军在敌人的海岸外多么远的地方布雷最有效？为什么？

Yībānde shuō hǎijūn zài dírén de hǎi'ànwài duōme yuǎnde dìfang bùléi zuìyǒuxiào? Wèishénme?

24. 听说在 1975 年以后，中国制造了很多新型扫雷艇，常常在北方的海岸外巡逻。为什么？

Tīngshuō zài Yījiǔqīwǔnián yǐhòu, Zhōngguó zhìzàole hěnduō xīnxíng sǎoléitǐng, chángcháng zài běifāng de hǎi'ànwài xúnluó. Wèishénme?

25. 中国目前科技很落后，海军舰艇只能防御领海。将来实现四个现代化以后，会不会制造攻击用的军舰？为什么？

Zhōngguó mùqián kējì hěn luòhòu, hǎijūn jiàntǐng zhǐnéng fángyù lǐnghǎi. Jiānglái shíxiàn sìge xiàndàihuà yǐhòu, huì buhuì zhìzào gōngjī yòngde jūnjiàn? Wèishénme?

26. 请说一说猎潜舰上有哪些反潜武器和装备？它们怎么样配合起来摧毁敌人的潜水艇？

Qǐng shuōyishuō lièqiánjiànshang yǒu nǎxiē fǎnqián wǔqì hé zhuāngbèi? Tāmen zěnmeyàng pèihéqǐlai cuīhuǐ dírén de qiánshuǐtǐng?

27. 为什么我们在领海上布满了水雷以后，对保卫祖国的海岸很有效？请说一说。

Wèishénme wǒmen zài lǐnghǎishang bùmǎnle shuǐléi yǐhòu, duì bǎowèi zǔguó de hǎi'àn hěn yǒuxiào? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

28. 听说新型坦克都装备有火箭发射器，请说一说这种装备在攻击的时候有什么用？

Tīngshuō xīnxíng tǎnkè dōu zhuāngbèi yǒu huǒjiàn fāshèqì. Qǐng shuō-yīshuō zhèzhǒng zhuāngbèi zài gōngjī de shíhou yǒu shénme yòng?

29. 海军进攻敌人的海岸并且控制了一部分海岸地区以后，为什么还要空运部队去支援？请讲一讲。

Hǎijūn jìngōng dírén de hǎiàn bìngqiě kòngzhìle yībùfen hǎiàn dìqū yǐhòu, wèishénme hái yào kōngyùn bùduì qù zhīyuán? Qǐng jiǎngyījiǎng.

30. 驱逐舰在护送航空母舰去攻击敌人海岸的时候，最主要的任务是什么？

Qūzhújiàn zài hùsòng hángkōngmǔjiàn qù gōngjī dírén hǎiàn de shíhou, zuì zhǔyàode rènwù shì shénme?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. This time, before the infantry lands, two destroyers will shell positions on the enemy seacoast.
2. If the sonar malfunctions, the antisubmarine weapons are useless and the ship will have to withdraw.
3. According to intelligence, the enemy will lay mines in our territorial waters tomorrow.
4. Torpedoes are our most important antisubmarine weapon, but we also have rocket launchers and depth charges.
5. This destroyer's endurance is over 3500 NM, but it has to rely on other ships for support.
6. The enemy has already withdrawn from their positions on the seacoast, and has stopped shelling our fortifications.

7. Because our destroyers are all patrolling, we'll have to rely on frigates to escort the landing ships.
8. In order to accomplish minesweeping missions, some minesweepers have sonar equipment.
9. As soon as the enemy LST enters our territorial waters, our torpedo boats will fire their torpedoes.
10. Our destroyers are faster than our frigates. The speed of this destroyer is about 32 knots, while the speed of our frigates is about 27 or 28 knots.
11. Although oilers and repair ships don't have much firepower themselves, the support they give other kinds of warships and craft is extremely important.
12. The repair ship can supply this unit's patrol boats with a very large variety of spare parts.
13. Warships equipped with antisubmarine weapons include destroyers, frigates, subchasers, and minesweepers; auxiliaries don't have them.

14. The enemy thinks (presumes) that our frigates only have guns, anti-submarine weapons, and torpedoes. Actually, the variety isn't limited to just those few types of weapons.
15. Their Navy relies on foreign countries to supply missiles, torpedoes, and various types of instruments.
16. From 1973 to 1978 we bought over 800 mines from abroad and, apart from this, we built over 1500 ourselves.
17. Our landing ships are not limited to carrying tanks; when attacking the enemy's seacoast, we also rely on them to supply our soldiers with other types of equipment.
18. The enemy submarine used torpedoes and attacked our warships, but they did not aim properly and did not hit any of our ships.
19. In time of war it sometimes is more important to have a good supply system than to have good tactics.
20. The largest warship in the world was Japanese; its displacement was over 60,000 tons, but it was destroyed by American airplanes and submarines because the Japanese employed bad tactics.

21. The captain of our submarine discovered a large enemy aircraft carrier, but we didn't have enough time to fire any torpedoes.
22. Our weapons and ammunition are sufficient for defense, but not for attack; the problem of supply is very complicated.
23. Destroyers are not limited to shooting enemy warships and airplanes but are also used to lay mines, patrol, and reconnoiter.
24. The main duty of a submarine is to destroy enemy ships by using torpedoes, but during wartime they have been used to transport soldiers and supplies over long distances.
25. Rifles and machine guns can only be used against enemy infantrymen; we use recoilless rifles and cannon to fight tanks, etc.
26. The destroyers in our navy are patterned after those of the Soviet Union, with a displacement of more than 3,700 tons, and having a draft of five meters.
27. Our Navy still uses airplanes that can fire torpedoes, but I think that those planes are unable to contribute to national defense.

28. The enemy ship entered our territorial waters looking for fish, but before our destroyers could fire at it, the ship struck a mine and was blown up.

29. The enemy tanks are all large and have guns with a caliber of 105 mm; I suppose it will be very easy for them to destroy our pillboxes and fortifications.

30. Our government welcomes people who come to our country to do research on nuclear weapons, but up to the present they still have not produced a bomb.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Wǒmen gāng jiēdaole yíge qīngbào shuō dírén kǒngpà wǒmen pài qūzhújiàn hōngjī tāmen de hǎiàn, yǐjīng zài tāmen de lǐnghǎi bùléi le. Búguò, wǒmen yǒu sāoléijiàn, kéyǐ xiān bǎ shuǐléi dōu sāole zài yǒu qūzhújiàn hōngjī.
2. Hǎoxiē guójiā rènwéi méiyǒu hángkōngmǔjiàn de hǎijūn jiùshì méiyǒu zuòzhàn lìliàng de hǎijūn. Zhège wánquán búduì. Hángkōngmǔjiàn zuìdàde yòngchū jiùshì néng dàizhe fēijī dào zuòzhànde dìfang qù, yòng fēijī tóudàn huòshì yǎnhù jiàntǐng jìngōng. Zhōngguó hǎijūn xiànzài hái méiyǒu hángkōng mǔjiàn, kěshì wǒmen bùnéng shuō tāde hǎijūn méiyǒu zuòzhàn lìliàng.
3. Yíkào wàiguó gōngyìng fǎnqián wǔqì búshì hǎo bànfǎ. Wèishénme ne? Wǒ gěi nǐ jiǎngyíjiǎng. Dìyī, huāqián mǎi dāngrán bǐ zìjǐ zhìzào guǐde duō. Dìèr, rúguǒ yǒu yìtiān nàge guójiā hé nǐde guānxi gǎode bùhǎo, tāmen jiù búzài jìxù gōngyìng, nàge shíhou nǐ zěnme bàn?
4. Rénrén dōu zhīdao yùnshūjiàn zuìhǎo yǒu qūzhújiàn hùsòng. Kěshì wǒmen zhǐyǒu liǎngsōu qūzhújiàn, suǒyǐ Wáng Tóngzhǐ bù dé bú pài hùwèijiàn hé dǎodàn kuàitǐng fùzé hùsòng. Zhèxiē jiàntǐng suǐrán bùrú qūzhújiàn, dànshì bǐ méiyǒu jiàntǐng hùsòng hǎoduōle.

5. Yìjiǔqīsìnián Sìrénbāng pàile yíge gānbù dào wǒmen zhèsōu jūnjiān lái kànkan wǒmende gōngzuò qíngkuàng, nàge rén duì hǎijūnde shìqing shénme dōu bùdǒng. Fùzérén Zhāng Míngguāng Tóngzhì shuō zhèsōu jūnjiānde sùdù shì měi xiǎoshí shíèrjié. Tā shuō zěnme zhème shǎo a, píngchángde qìchē měi xiǎoshí kéyì zǒu bā, jiǔshígōnglǐ zěnme jūnjiān bǐ qìchē màn ne?

6. Wáng Tóngzhì, nǐ shuōde huà wánquán duì. Máo Zédōng sīxiǎng shì wǒmen zuìhǎode wǔqì, kěshì jūnjiān méiyǒu shēngnà jiù méifázi zhīdao shuǐdǐxia yǒu méiyǒu dírénde qiánshuǐtǐng. Wúlùn zhǐzhànyuán bǎ Máo Zédōng sīxiǎng gǎode duōme hǎo, yě méi fázi zhīdao qiánshuǐtǐng zài nǎlǐ.

7. Dírénde hǎijūn hěn xiǎo, zhǐyǒu dēnglùtǐng yúléitǐng, lián yìsōu qūzhūjiān yě méiyǒu. Yìjiǔqièrnián wǒmen pàile sānsōu xún-yángjiān yòng huǒpào hōngjǐ tāmende hǎiàn zhèndì. Tāmende jiàntǐng wǒmen yìsōu yě méi kànjian.

8. Tā shì lùjūnde zhànshì. Yīnwei zhèsōu jūnjiān xūyào rén zuò fàn, suǒyǐ lùjūn pài tā lái línshí bāngbangmáng. Tā duì jūnjiān shàngmiande shìqing yìdiǎnr yě bùshúxī, zěnme zhīdao yǒu shénme huǒpào, xùhánglǐ zěnmeyàng. Zhèxiē wèntí nǐ děi wèn gānbù cái xíng.

9. Xiūlǐjiān zhǔyàode rènwù shì fùzé xiūlǐ, búshì yònglai zuòzhānde, suǐrán yě yǒu wǔqì kěshì dōushì yònglai fāngyùde. Nǐ pài xiūlǐjiān qù hùsòng yùnshūjiān. Tā bùnéng gēn dírénde jiàntǐng zuòzhàn, duì yùnshūjiān yǒu shénme hǎochù ne?

10. Wǒmende sāngē jūnzhǒng jiù hǎoxiàng xiōngdìjiěmèi, bǐcǐ bāngzhù. Yǒu-shíhou hǎijūn zhīyuán kōngjūn, yǒushíhou kōngjūn zhīyuán hǎijūn. Shéi yě bùnéng shuō nǎgē jūnzhǒng zuì zhòngyào. Bǐfāngshuō ba, fánwèi zǔguó de hǎiàn shì sāngē jūnzhǒng de gōngzuò, bǐcǐ zhīyuán.

11. Dírén de lùjūn bùduì yǐjīng cóng hǎiàn chètūle, yīnwei tāmen de jiàntǐng bèi wǒmen pòhuàile bǎifēnzhī qǐ, bāshí, méiyǒu lìliang fāngyù wǒmen hǎijūn de gōngjī. Búguò, tāmen shì búshì jìxù chètūi háishì jìhuà gòuzhù xīn de gōngshì, wǒ jiù bútài qīngchū, děi dēng wǒ zài jiēdao qīngbào cái zhīdao ne.

12. Bǎ liángshì dānyào yùndào Kūnmíng qùde shíhou, děi qǐng zhèngguǐjūn de bùduì hùsòng huòshì qǐng zǔzhǐ pài mínbīng hùsòng, yīnwei lùshang yǒu fǎndòngpài de yóujiùduì, tāmen kěnéng gōngjī. Rúguǒ zhèngguǐjūn huòshì mínbīng bùnéng zhīyuán, nǎme nǐ jiù gěi biānfáng bùduì fùzérén dǎ diànhuà, qǐng tā pài zhànshì zhīyuán.

13. Zài yībān de qīngkuàngxià lùjūn huòshì hǎijūnlùzhànduì dēnglù de shíhou zuò yìzhǒng tèbié de dēnglùjiàn huòshì dēnglùtǐng. Búguò, nǐ méiyǒu nàzhǒng dēnglùjiàn de huà, bìng bú tài yào jǐn, nǐ kéyǐ yòng tǎnkè dēnglùjiàn, yěxǔ bútài héshì, keshì hái kéyǐ yòng.

14. Nǐmen chètūi yǐqián, dìyī, yīngāi xiān gēn hǎijūn liánluò, qǐng tāmen pài yùnshūjiàn hé dēnglùtǐng lái. Dièr, nǐmende gānbù yīngāi bǎ suǒyǒude gōngshì, zhèndì hé bùnéng dàizǒude wǔqì dānyào wánquán pòhuài bié liúgěi dírén. Dìsān, dírén yěxǔ jiēdao qǐngbào huì pài fēiji lái tóudàn, wǒmen yīngāi qǐng kōngjūn yǎnhù chètūi.
15. Wǒmen wúlùn bàn shénme shì dōu yīngāi xiāng fázi zìjǐ zuò, búyào yìkào biérén. Wǒmen shì gāo gémíngde, gāo gémíngde jūnduì guòqù měi yìkào biérén bāngzhù wǒmen, jīntiān gèng bùyīngāi xīwàng biérén bāngzhù. Yěxǔ yǒu rén wèn dājiā nǐmen guòqù búshì yìkào pínxiàzhōng-nóng gēn gōngrén ma? Wǒ rènwei nà búshì wǒmen yìkào tāmen, érshì wǒmen yǒu tāmende zhīyuán, cái bǎ gémíng gāohǎode.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate," because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 5

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Wáng Zhōngwēi and Commander Larson continue their discussion from the previous unit.

1. L: Our conversation about the Chinese Navy has been extremely interesting. What other kinds of ships do you have in your Navy?

W: 我们还有扫雷舰，不但用来扫雷也用来护送别的军舰。扫雷舰有各种仪器。用这些仪器指战员就可以知道哪里有水雷，然后就把水雷摧毁。

Wǒmen hái yǒu sǎoléijiàn, búdàn yòng lái sǎolái yě yòng lái hùsòng biéde jūnjiàn. Sǎoléijiàn yǒu gèzhǒng yíqì. Yòng zhèxiē yíqì zhǐzhànyuán jiù kěyǐ zhǐdào nǎlǐ yǒu shuǐléi, ránhòu jiù bǎ shuǐléi cūihuǐ.

2. L: You probably have quite a variety of auxiliary vessels.

W: 我们有修理舰跟补给舰，我们的大军舰到远的地方去的时候需要这种辅助舰来支援。

Wǒmen yǒu xiūlǐjiàn gēn bǔjǐjiàn, wǒmende dàjūnjiàn dào yuǎnde dìfang qùde shíhòu xūyào zhèzhǒng fǔzhùjiàn lái zhīyuán.

3. L: You have LST's in your Navy, too, don't you?

W: 有！我们登陆的时候，部队和补给都由坦克登陆舰运输。撤退的时候，受伤的指战员也可以用坦克登陆舰运输。

Yǒu! Wǒmen dēnglù de shíhòu, bùduì hé bǔjǐ dōu yóu tǎnkè dēnglùjiàn yùnsū. Chètuì de shíhòu, shòushāngde zhǐzhànyuán yě kěyǐ yòng tǎnkèdēnglùjiàn yùnsū.

4. L: I was stationed on an LST once. I'll tell you that they are not the most comfortable ship in the Navy.

W: 可不是吗！我没坐过登陆舰，我认识一个同志。他说他坐登陆舰的时候总是吐得很利害。我觉得登陆舰虽然不太舒服，可是在战时很有用。你想想，没有登陆舰，我们怎么能登陆？

Kěbúshìma! Wǒ méi zuòguo dēnglùjiàn, wǒ rènshi yíge tóngzhì tā shuō tā zuò dēnglùjiàn de shíhou zǒngshì tūde hěn lihai. Wǒ juéde dēnglùjiàn suǐrán bútài shūfu, kěshi zài zhànshí hěn yǒuyòng. Nǐ xiǎngxiǎng, méiyǒu dēnglùjiàn wǒmen zěnme néng dēnglù?

5. L: That's true. It would have been difficult to win the war without them. Oh, I want to ask you, do your destroyers have guided missiles and rocket launchers?

W: 两种都有。此外还有四门一三〇毫米的火炮，八门五七毫米的火炮，八门二五毫米的火炮。

Liǎngzhǒng dōu yǒu. Cǐwài hái yǒu sìmén yīsānlíngxiǎomǐ de huǒpào, bāmén wǔqīhǎomǐ de huǒpào, bāmén èrwǔhǎomǐ de huǒpào.

6. L: Do you also equip your destroyers with antisubmarine weapons?

W: 我们的反潜武器包括深水炸弹、火箭发射器等等。有的巡逻艇还有鱼雷和其他的反潜武器。

Wǒmen de fǎnqián wǔqì bāokuò shēnshuǐ zhàdàn, huǒjiàn fāshèqì děngděng. Yǒude xúnluótǐng hái yǒu yúléi hé qítāde fǎnqián wǔqì.

7. L: What type of duties are assigned to a destroyer?

W: 驱逐舰护送运输舰和其他的舰艇，驱逐舰的任务不止护送，也包括侦察和巡逻。有的驱逐舰还有布雷设备，可以担任布雷的工作。

Qūzhújiàn hùsòng yùnshūjiàn hé qítāde jiàntǐng. Qūzhújiàn de rènwù bùzhǐ hùsòng, yě bāokuò zhēnchá hé xúnluó. Yǒude qūzhújiàn hái yǒu bùléi shèbèi, kěyǐ dānrèn bùléi de gōngzuò.

8. L: How fast can your destroyers go?

W: 我不知道最高速度是多少，可是我想最少有三十多节。续航力三千到五千海里。

Wǒ bùzhīdao zuìgāo sùdù shì duōshǎo, kěshi wǒ xiǎng zuìshǎo yǒu sānshíduō jié. Xùhánglì sānqiān dào wǔqiān hǎilǐ.

9. L: You told me this morning that your Navy doesn't have any cruisers, so what kind of ship would you use to bombard an enemy seacoast?

W: 我们总是先派驱逐舰轰击敌人的海岸，然后部队才开始登陆。

Wǒmen zǒngshì xiān pài qūzhújiàn hōngjī dírén de hǎiàn, ránhòu bùduì cái kāishǐ dēnglù.

10. L: I can see that destroyers play a very important role in the Chinese Navy.

w: 你说的一点儿也不错。可惜我们的驱逐舰还赶不上先进国家的水平，所以得经常地改良。比方说，从前的驱逐舰没有声纳，现在的不但有声纳也有很多别的新式仪器。

Nǐ shuōde yìdiǎnr yě búcuò. Kěxǐ wǒmende qūzhújiàn hái gǎnbushàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng, suǒyǐ děi jīngchángde gǎiliáng. Bǐfāngshuō, cóngqián de qūzhújiàn méiyǒu shēngnà, xiànzài de búdàn yǒu shēngnà yě yǒu hěnduō biéde xīnshì yíqì.

11. L: Comrade Wang, I have really enjoyed our discussion today.

w: 不要客气！我希望有一天能到美国去参观你们的海军基地和舰艇。

Búyào kèqì! Wǒ xīwàng yǒuyìtiān néng dào Měiguó qù cānguān nǐmende hǎijūn jīdì hé jiàntǐng.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Following an amphibious landing, the enemy coastal defense units have attacked the PRC Marine units, and have inflicted heavy casualties. The three officers responsible for the amphibious assault have met to discuss the course of action to be taken.

Role 1: Major Mao is the commander of the Marine forces. So far, 60 percent of his troops have been killed or wounded, and 80 percent of his tanks have been destroyed by enemy antitank guns and tanks. Originally, he was relying on the immediate landing of the remainder of the Marine forces (still on the transport ships), but intelligence reports that over 1000 mines have been laid by enemy patrol boats during the night, and the remainder of his troops and equipment cannot be landed. He feels that his forces must be evacuated immediately, and if they cannot be withdrawn within 12 hours, they will all be killed by the enemy forces. He has only 800 infantrymen, 40 antitank guns, 25 mortars, and 100 machine guns left, as well as 25 tanks.

Role 2: Comrade Jiang is the naval commander. He has assigned 15 minesweepers to sweep the enemy mines, but it will take at least 10 hours to complete the operation, and then begin the evacuation of the troops or landing of the remainder of the troops. Of the 20 transport ships which have not yet landed their Marines, 13 have been destroyed by enemy submarines and patrol boats. All of the friendly destroyers and frigates are currently searching for enemy submarines, as only they have effective sonar and weapons for destroying submarines (antisubmarine weapons). The only warships left to support the Marine defensive positions are two cruisers and six patrol boats, as the remainder of the warships have been assigned to escort and protect the transport ships.

Role 3: Comrade Lin is the representative of the Central Committee. If possible, the Marines should continue their assault; if not, all available warships must use their firepower and rockets to bombard the enemy's assault positions and support the withdrawal of the Marine forces. The available patrol boats should be used to escort landing craft and to suppress enemy fire with their machine guns. The Marines should be told to board not only the landing craft, but the minesweepers and patrol boats as well. As the only Landing Ship Tank (LST) has been damaged by enemy artillery fire and the repair ship destroyed by enemy patrol boats, the tanks cannot be withdrawn, and must be destroyed by the Marines before they withdraw.

Scenario 2

Situation: A convoy of transport ships will be travelling from China to a foreign country to deliver foodstuffs for political reasons. The Central Committee is concerned that one of the imperialist nations may try to destroy the convoy.

Role 1: Comrade Hu is the commander of the PRC coastal defense forces. He is willing to provide patrol boats to escort the ships, as long as they remain within 10 nautical miles of the seacoast. The patrol boats are equipped with both sonar and radar, as well as various types of antisubmarine weapons. The artillery units assigned to the coastal defense units will also be assigned to support the transport ships while they remain within five nautical miles of the coast (which is the maximum range of the artillery). Once the transports go beyond 10 nautical miles, the coastal defense units will assign fighter aircraft to escort the transport ships until they leave Chinese territorial waters. After leaving territorial waters, the coastal defense units cannot provide any support.

Role 2: Comrade Lin is a representative of the PRC Navy. The Navy is willing to assign two destroyers and a frigate to escort the transports once they leave territorial waters; however, only the frigate has both effective sonar and radar, as the destroyers are both very old and have not received new equipment. Since the cruising range of the frigate and destroyers is less than that of the transports, a tanker will also have to be assigned by the Central Committee. The Navy has an amphibious assault exercise planned during this same time period, and it is possible that a tanker will not be available. Though the coastal defense forces also have oilers, one would have to be assigned to the Navy by the Central Committee. If an oiler cannot be assigned, or Hu is unwilling to assign an oiler to accompany the transports, the frigate and destroyers would have to travel at less than 10 knots to conserve/save fuel.

Role 3: Comrade Yang is the officer responsible for the transport ships. As the transports have no defensive weapons at all, he is very concerned about the possibility of enemy attack; either by enemy aircraft, enemy submarine, or enemy warships. Though the transports have no weapons, they are all equipped with the newest radar and sonar equipment; so they need not depend on escort ships to discover the enemy--only to defend them against enemy attack. Yang is also concerned about the possibility that the enemy may have mined the territorial waters of the nation to which they are going, and all 20 of his transports may be destroyed by enemy mines.

Scenario 3

Situation: An amphibious landing is anticipated by enemy Marines near "Tiao Shen Dao." Three members of the coastal defense units have met to discuss defensive plans.

Role 1: Comrade Tang is responsible for the construction of defensive fortifications along the seacoast. Besides numerous trenches and pillboxes, numerous (man-made) terrain features have been constructed and mines have been laid in an attempt to destroy the enemy landing craft and LSTs before they can land. The coastal defense units have all completed their defensive positions, and Tang feels that the enemy forces will suffer heavy casualties as soon as they land. If the enemy attack is too strong, or their supporting firepower from the enemy warships is too fierce, the defensive forces can withdraw to new defensive positions which have been constructed approximately 10 miles from the seacoast.

Role 2: Comrade Li is the commander of the naval forces in the area. His responsibility is to give full support to the coastal defense units and to provide intelligence information concerning the enemy forces. They will notify the coastal defense units as soon as the enemy force enters Chinese territorial waters, and again when they are five nautical miles from the seacoast. As soon as the PRC submarines assigned to Li sight the enemy units, they will attack the enemy transports, LSTs, oilers, and repair ships (as they have no antisubmarine weapons and their speed is less than 10 knots). At the same time, some of the patrol boats will begin laying mines ahead of the enemy while the rest attack the enemy warships with torpedoes and missiles.

Role 3: Comrade Sun is the commander of the local militia. As his troops have not had as much training as the coastal defense units, he feels that his primary mission is to support and supply the coastal defense units rather than attacking the enemy Marine units. His units will use their artillery and mortars to bombard the enemy landing forces and to destroy the enemy landing craft, but they rely on the coastal defense units to defend the militia positions. He feels that their main targets should be the landing craft and landing ships, as their destruction would not allow the enemy to withdraw his amphibious landing forces or land additional amphibious forces.

UNIT 6

DIALOGUE

1. A: 人民解放军空军的飞机都是自己造的吗?
B: 除了少数的直升机和运输机还需要向外国买以外, 其余的都是自己造的。
2. A: 一共大约有多少飞机?
B: 四千架左右。包括歼击机、强击机、轰炸机、截击机、侦察机、运输机, 等等。大部分是喷气式飞机, 只有小部分是活塞式的。
3. A: 歼击机和强击机有什么分别?
B: 歼击机的特点是速度快, 每小时能飞一千多公里, 有的甚至于能飞三千多公里。一般地说, 一架歼击机有两、三门三十毫米的机关炮, 并且还有导弹跟火箭。强击机比歼击机大一点儿, 除了我刚才说的那些武器以外, 还可以带五百公斤的炸弹。
4. A: 那两种飞机可以担任什么任务?
B: 都可以用来攻击敌机、扫射敌人的地面部队、掩护我们的进攻部队。强击机还可以投弹轰炸敌军或是进行低空扫射。这是普通歼击机办不到的事。
5. A: 今天是我第一次听见强击机这个名称。
B: 你没听说过吗? 其实, 歼击机就是战斗机; 强击机就是战斗轰炸机。

6. A: 那么战斗轰炸机跟轰炸机有什么分别呢?

B: 轰炸机带的炸弹比战斗轰炸机多的多。轰炸机最少可以带五、六吨炸弹、可以支援我们的地面部队、摧毁各种坚固的军事目标。

1. A: Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn kōngjūn de fēijī dōu shì zìjǐ zàode ma?
Are all the airplanes of the PLA Air Force domestically built?
- B: Chúle shǎoshùde zhíshēngjī hé yùnshūjī hái xūyào xiàng wàiguó mǎi yīwài, qíyúde dōu shì zìjǐ zàode.
Except for a small number of helicopters and transport planes that still need to be bought from abroad, the rest are all built domestically.
2. A: Yígòng dàyuē yǒu duōshǎo fēijī?
Approximately how many aircraft do you have altogether?
- B: Sìqiānjià zuǒyòu. Bāokuò jiānjījī, qiángjījī, hōngzhàjī, jiéjījī, zhēnchájī, yùnshūjī, dēngděng. Dàbùfen shì pēnqìshì fēijī, zhǐ yǒu xiǎobùfen shì huósāishìde.
Around 4,000. It includes fighters, fighter-bombers, bombers, interceptors, reconnaissance planes, transports, etc. Most of them are jet planes; only a small number are piston-type.
3. A: Jiānjījī hé qiángjījī yǒu shénme fēnbié?
What's the difference between a fighter plane and a fighter-bomber?
- B: Jiānjījīde tèdiǎn shì sùdù kuài, měi xiǎoshí néng fēi yìqiānduō gōnglǐ, yǒude shènzhìyú néng fēi sānqiānduō gōnglǐ. Yībānde shuō, yíjià jiānjījī yǒu liǎng sānmén sānshí háomǐ de jīguānpào, bìngqiě hái yǒu dǎodàn gēn huǒjiàn. Qiángjījī bǐ jiānjījī dà yìdiǎnr, chúle wǒ gāngcái shuōde nèixie wǔqì yīwài, hái keyi dài wǔbǎi gōngjīn de zhàdàn.
The distinguishing characteristic of a fighter plane is its high speed. A fighter plane can fly more than 1,000 km per hour; some fighter planes even can fly more than 3,000 km per hour. Generally speaking, a fighter has two or three 30-mm cannons as well as guided missiles and rockets. A fighter-bomber is a little larger than a fighter. Besides the weapons that I just mentioned, it can also carry 500 kg of bombs.

4. A: Nèiliǎngzhǒng fèijī kéyì dānrèn shénme rènwù? What missions can those two types of aircraft perform?
- B: Dōu kéyì yònglai gōngjī díjī, sāoshè dírénde dìmiàn bùduì, yǎnhù wǒmende jìngōng bùduì. Qiángjījī hái kéyì tóudàn hōngzhà díjūn huòshi jìnxíng dīkōng sāoshè. Zhèi shì pǔtōng jiānjījī bànbudào de shì. Both of them can be used for attacking enemy aircraft, strafing enemy ground forces, and giving cover to our attacking troops. A fighter-bomber can bomb enemy forces or carry out low-altitude strafing. This is something an ordinary fighter can't do.
5. A: Jīntiān shì wǒ dìyīcì tīngjian qiángjījī zhèige míngchēng. Today is the first time that I've heard of the term qiángjījī.
- B: Nǐ méi tīngshuōguo ma? Qíshí, jiānjījī jiù shì zhàndòuji; qiángjījī jiù shì zhàndòu hōngzhàjī. Haven't you heard of it before? Actually, a jiānjījī is just a zhàndòuji and qiángjījī is just a zhàndòu-hōngzhàjī.
6. A: Nàme zhàndòu hōngzhàjī gēn hōngzhàjī yǒu shénme fēibié ne? Well then, what's the difference between a fighter-bomber and a fighter-bomber and a bomber?
- B: Hōngzhàjī dài de zhàndàn bǐ zhàndòu hōngzhàjī duō de duō. Hōngzhàjī zuìshǎo kéyì dài wǔ, liùdūn zhàndàn, kéyì zhī-yuán wǒmende dìmiàn bùduì, cuīhuǐ gèzhǒng jiāngùde jūnshì mùbiāo. A bomber can carry a lot more bombs than a fighter-bomber. A bomber can carry at least five or six tons of bombs, give support to our ground forces, and destroy all kinds of strong military targets.

VOCABULARY

办得到/办不到	bàndedào/bànbudào	to be able/unable to do
敌机	díjī	enemy plane, hostile aircraft (HAC)
敌军	díjūn	enemy forces
低空	dīkōng	low altitude
地面部队	dìmiàn bùduì	ground forces
火箭	huǒjiàn	rocket (C: zhǐ)
活塞式	huósāishì	piston type
机	-jī	(a suffix added to a verb or verb phrase, thus forming a type of aircraft, e.g., zhēnchá + jī = zhēnchájī; yùnnshū + jī = yùnnshūjī; hōngzhā + jī = hōngzhājī, etc.)
架	jià	counter for aircraft, etc.
坚固	jiāngù	to be strong (referring to inanimate objects)
歼击机	jiānjījī	fighter plane (C: jià)
截击机	jiéjījī	interceptor (plane) (C: jià)
机关炮	jīguānpào	cannon, gun (with a caliber of about 30 mm; mounted on an aircraft)
喷气式	pēnqìshì	jet type
强击机	qiángjījī	fighter-bomber (C: jià)
其余的	qíyúde	the rest, the remaining _____
扫射	sǎoshè	to strafe, to sweep (with a gun) (mil.)
少数	sǎoshù	minority, a small number
甚至于	shènzhìyú	even (to the point of...)
特点	tèdiǎn	distinguishing characteristic

炸弹

zhàdàn

bomb

战斗轰炸机

zhàndòu-hōngzhàjī

fighter-bomber (C: jià)

STORY COMPREHENSION

老高是中国空军作战部队的负责人。他在中国空军服务已经有二十多年了。中国空军的各式飞机他差不多都开过；象战斗机、侦察机、轰炸机、运输机什么的。一九六五年以前他驾驶的飞机都是活塞式的。这些飞机有很多缺点；比方说，引擎的声音大、飞行的速度慢、续航力不够远等等。但是在一九七五年以后，中国自己制造了很多新型的飞机；象歼击机、强击机、截击机，什么的，都是喷气式的。这些飞机飞得又快又远，并且火炮强；特别是歼击机，在飞行时候比声音的速度还要快三倍左右。而且，别看它很小，飞机上有最新型雷达装备，能够自动操作起飞和降落。此外，飞机上除了有两门

Lǎo Gāo shì Zhōngguó kōngjūn zuòzhàn bùduì de fùzérén. Tā zài Zhōngguó kōngjūn fúwù yǐjīng yǒu èrshiduōnián le. Zhōngguó kōngjūn de gèshì fēijī tā chàbuduō dōu kāiguò; xiàng zhàn dòujī, zhēnchájī, hōngzhàjī, yùnsūjī shénmede. Yījiǔliùwǔnián yǐqián tā jiàoshì de fēijī dōu shì huósāishì de. Zhèxiē fēijī yǒu hěn duō quēdiǎn; bǐfāng shuō, yǐnqīng de shēngyīn dà, fēixíng de sùdù màn, xùhánglì búgòu yuǎn dēngdēng. Dànshì zài yījiǔqīwǔ nián yǐhòu, Zhōngguó zìjǐ zhìzào le hěn duō xīnxíngde fēijī; xiàng jiānjījī, qiángjījī, jiéjījī, shénmede, dōu shì pēnqìshì de. Zhèxiē fēijī fēide yòu kuài yòu yuǎn, bīngqiē huǒpào qiáng; tèbié shì jiānjījī, zài fēixíng de shíhou bǐ shēngyīn de sùdù hái yào kuài sānbèi zuǒyòu. Érqiě, bié kàn tā hěn xiǎo, fēijī shàng yǒu zuì xīnxíng léidá zhuāngbèi, nénggòu zìdòng cāozuò qǐfēi hé

30 毫米的机关炮以外，还有导弹跟火箭。因为老高在空军服务了很多年，成绩又好，所以组织觉得他非常可靠，就分派他再受训练，学习强击机的性能、构造和怎么使用飞机上的仪表跟火炮。在受训的时候，常常抓实弹射击和攻击技术的演习。比方说，有一次演习的科目是中国的侦察机发现很多敌人的飞机和两艘驱逐舰配合了一艘潜水艇开进中国的领海，打算偷袭我们的海军舰艇跟海岸上的工事。空军部队的负责人接到了这个情报马上挑选老高领导一队歼击机去作战。老高接到这个任务以后，在五分钟内，就带着其他的飞行员，一共九架强击机，起飞到领海一万米高的天上，然后很快地就飞到敌机的上面。敌人的战斗机比老高的多，可是他们的飞行技术不太好。这

jiànguò. Cíwài, fēijīshang chūle yǒu liǎngmén sānshí háomǐ de jī-guānpào yǐwài, hái yǒu dǎodàn gēn huǒjiàn. Yīnwei Lǎo Gāo zài kōngjūn fúwùle hěnduō nián, chéngjī yòu hǎo, suóyì zǔzhǐ juéde tā fēicháng kěkào, jiù fēnpài tā zài shòu xùnliàn, xuéxí qiángjījī de xìngnéng, gòuzào hé zěnmē shǐyòng fēijīshang de yíbiǎo gēn huǒpào. Zài shòuxùn de shíhou, chángcháng zhuā shídàn shèjī hé gōngjī jìshù de yǎnxí. Bǐfang shuō, yǒu yíci yǎnxí de kēmù shì Zhōngguó de zhēnchájī fāxiàn hěnduō dírén de fēijī hé liǎngsōu qūzhújiàn pèihéle yīsōu qiánshuǐtǐng kāijìn Zhōngguó de lǐnghǎi, dǎsuàn tōuxí wǒmende hǎijūn jiàntǐng gēn hǎiànshang de gōngshì. Kōngjūn bùduì de fùzérén jiēdào le zhège qíngbào mǎshang tiāoxuǎn Lǎo Gāo lǐngdǎo yíduì jiānjījī qù zuòzhàn. Lǎo Gāo jiēdào zhège rènwù yǐhòu, zài wǔfēnzhōng yǐnèi, jiù dài zhe qítāde fēixíngyuán, yí gòng jiǔjià qiángjījī, qǐfēi dào lǐnghǎi yíwàn mǐ gāode tiānshang, ránhòu hěnkuaide jiù fēidào díjī de

个时候还不知道老高的飞机已经飞到他们的头上了。老高一点儿也没浪费时间，在敌机发现他们以前，先用空对空导弹向敌人射击，其他的同志也用机关炮扫射。十二架敌机还来不及攻击就都先后被摧毁了。接着老高又领导大家低空去攻击敌人的军舰和潜水艇。他们不停地发射火箭和深水炸弹。虽然敌人的驱逐舰也用高射炮射击他们。但是武器性能不大好，平时的作战训练也可能不太够，所以射击技术很差，没有办法打中老高他们的飞机。这样经过了半个多小时的快速度攻击，敌人的驱逐舰跟潜水艇都被摧毁了。

演习完了以后，老高他们一架一架的安全飞回来。训练中心的负责人和

shàngmian. Dírén de zhàndòuji bǐ
Lǎo Gāo de duō, kěshi tāmen de fēixíng
jìshù bú tài hǎo. Zhè ge shíhou hái
bù zhī dào Lǎo Gāo de fēijī yǐ jǐng
fēi dào tāmen de tóushang le. Lǎo Gāo
yì diǎnr yě méi làng fèi shíjiān, zài
díjī fāxiàn tāmen yǐ qián, xiān yòng
kōngduìkōng dǎodàn xiàng dí rén shèjī,
qítā de tóngzhì yě yòng jīguānpào
sǎoshè. Shíèrjià díjī hái lái bù jí
gōngjī jiù dōu xiānhòu bèi cuīhuǐ le.
Jiēzhe, Lǎo Gāo yòu lǐngdǎo dàjiā
dīkōng qù gōngjī dí rén de jūnjiàn
hé qiánshuǐtǐng. Tāmen bùtíng de
fāshè huǒjiàn hé shēnshuǐ zhàdàn.
Suǐrán dí rén de qūzhújiàn yě yòng
gāoshèpào shèjī tāmen. Dànshi wúqǐ
xìngnéng bú dà hǎo, píngshí de zuòzhàn
xùnliàn yě kěnéng bú tài gòu, suǒyǐ
shèjī jìshù hěn chà, méiyǒu bàn fǎ
dǎzhòng Lǎo Gāo tāmen de fēijī.
Zhèyàng jǐngguò le bàn ge duō xiǎoshí
de kuàisùdù gōngjī, dí rén de qūzhújiàn
gēn qiánshuǐtǐng dōu bèi cuīhuǐ le.

Yǎnxí wánle yǐhòu, Lǎo Gāo
tāmen yíjià yíjià de ānquán fēi
huīlai. Xùnliàn zhōngxīn de fùzérén

干部就跟他们一起研究这次演习的优点和缺点。负责人说，按照空军的战术来看，老高使用了“最好的防御办法是攻击”的战术，这是第一个优点。第二个优点是用快速度攻击敌人，使得敌人来不及向我们射击就被打中了。第三个优点就是大家的准备工作作得好，所以能够在接到敌机来的情报不到五分钟就能起飞去作战，这比很多先进国家空军的水平还要高。以上说的都是这次演习的优点，那么缺点有没有呢？我看有两点。第一点是你们的飞机起飞以后，彼此飞得太近。这样很危险，因为如果那个时候正好有敌机从后边来偷袭，可能很容易被打中，甚至于被消灭。第二点，你们攻击敌人的驱逐舰和潜水艇的时候，有的飞机射击得太早，所以打中目标的火箭只有百分之八十

hé gānbù jiù gēn tāmen yìqǐ yánjiū zhècì yǎnxí de yōudiǎn hé quēdiǎn. Fùzérén shuō, ànzhào kōngjūn de zhànshù lái kàn, Lǎo Gāo shǐyòngle "zuìhǎode fángyù bànfǎ shì gōngjī" de zhànshù, zhè shì dìyíge yōudiǎn. Dìèrge yōudiǎn shì yòng kuàisùdù gōngjī dírén, shǐdé dírén láibùjí xiàng wǒmen shèjī jiù bèi dǎzhòngle. Dìsānge yōudiǎn jiù shì dàjiā de zhǔnbèi gōngzuò zuòde hǎo, suóyǐ nénggòu zài jiēdào díjī lái de qíngbào bú dào wǔfēn zhōng jiù néng qǐfēi qù zuòzhàn, zhè bǐ hěnduō xiānjìn guójiā kōngjūn de shuǐpíng hái yào gāo. Yǐshàng shuōde dōu shì zhècì yǎnxí de yōudiǎn, nàme quēdiǎn yǒu méiyǒu ne? Wǒ kàn yǒu liǎngdiǎn. Dìyīdiǎn shì nǐmen de fēijī qǐfēi yǐhòu, bǐcǐ fēide tài jìn. Zhèyang hěn wēixiǎn, yīnwèi rúguǒ nàge shíhou zhènghǎo yǒu díjī cóng hòubian lái lái tóuxí, kěnéng hěn róngyì bèi dǎzhòng, shènzhì yú bèi xiāomiè. Dìèrdiǎn, nǐmen gōngjī dírén de qūzhújiàn hé qiánshuǐtǐng de shíhou, yǒude fēijī shèjīde tài zǎo, suóyǐ

左右，子弹打中目标的只有百分之六十五左右。这种射击的水平还应该再提高一点才好。我们还是一个穷的国家，现在我们的党为了要实现四个现代化，处处都需要用钱，所以我们革命军人要尽量为国家省钱，也就是说，一发子弹要当十发来用。以上是我的看法，但是这并不意味着都对，你们有什么不同的意见，请提出来讨论。

dǎzhòng mùbiāo de huǒjiàn zhǐ yǒu
bǎifēnzhībāshí zuǒyòu, zǐdàn dǎzhòng
mùbiāo de zhǐ yǒu bǎifēnzhī liùshiwǔ
zuǒyòu. Zhèzhǒng shèjī de shuǐpíng
hái yīnggāi zài tígāo yìdiǎnr cái
hǎo. Wǒmen hái shì yíge qióngde
guójiā, xiànzài wǒmende dǎng wèile
yào shíxiàn sìge xiàndàihuà, chùchù
dōu xūyào yòng qián, suóyì wǒmen
gémìng jūnrén yào jìngliàng wèi
guójiā shěng qián, yě jiùshì shuō,
yīfā zǐdàn yào dāng shífā lái yòng.
Yǐshàng shì wǒde kànǎ, dànshì zhè
bìng búshì yìwèizhe dōu duì, nǐmen
yǒu shénme bùtóngde yìjian, qǐng
tíchūlai tāolùn.

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. How long has Lao Jin served in the Chinese Air Force?
2. How many types of airplanes did he operated before 1965 (Give 3 of 4 possible)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)
3. What were the shortcomings of the piston type airplanes (3)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)
4. What types of warplanes could the Chinese manufacture after 1975 (3)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)
5. What were the merits of Chinese-made jet planes (3)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)

6. How fast can a fighter-bomber fly?

7. What equipment and weapons does a fighter-bomber have (3)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)

8. Why did the organization send Lao Jin to learn the operation of a fighter-bomber (Give 2 of 3 possible)?
 - (1)
 - (2)

9. What was Lao Jin expected to learn during his advanced training with the Air Force (Give 1 of 4 possible)?

10. What did the Chinese reconnaissance plane discover during the military exercise (3)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)

11. What did the commander do after he got the information (be specific)?

12. How long did it take Lao Jin to take off?

13. What was the altitude of Lao Jin and his comrades' fighter-bombers before they attacked the enemy?

14. Which side had more fighter planes, Lao Jin's or the enemy's?
15. Why didn't the enemy know that Lao Jin's planes were flying above them?
16. What did Lao Jin and his comrades do before they were discovered by the enemy?
17. How did Lao Jin and his comrades attack the enemy's warships and submarines (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
18. How long did it take Lao Jin and his comrades to destroy the enemy's destroyer and submarines?
19. According to the commander's comments, what tactic did Lao Jin use in attacking the enemy (be specific)?
20. What were the second and third strong points of Lao Jin's tactics (2)?
 - (1)
 - (2)
21. Describe fully the two mistakes which Lao Jin made while attacking the enemy (2)?

22. a. What percentage of the hits did Lao Jin and his comrades score with rockets?

- b. What was the percentage of hits made with bullets?

23. According to the commander, what should be raised?

24. Why does the Party need money?

25. According to the commander, how can a revolutionary military man help his nation save money (be specific)?

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. How long has Lao Jin served in the Chinese Air Force?
(More than 20 years)
2. How many types of airplanes did he operate before 1965 (Give 3 of 4 possible)?
 - (1) (Fighters)
 - (2) (Reonnaissance planes)
 - (3) (Bombers)
 - (4) (Air transports)
3. What were the shortcomings of the piston type airplanes (3)?
 - (1) (Engine noise [is too loud])
 - (2) (Too slow [in flying])
 - (3) (Cruising range [is short])
4. What types of warplanes could the Chinese manufacture after 1975 (3)?
 - (1) (Jet fighter)
 - (2) (Fighter-bomber)
 - (3) (Interceptor)
5. What were the merits of Chinese-made Jet planes (3)?
 - (1) (Fast)
 - (2) (Long-range)
 - (3) (Heavy firepower)

6. How fast can a fighter-bomber fly?
(About three times the speed of sound [mach 3])
7. What equipment and weapons does a fighter-bomber have (3)?
 - (1) ([Newest] radar)
 - (2) (Two 30 mm machine guns)
 - (3) (Air-to-air missiles)
8. Why did the organization send Lao Jin to learn the operation of a fighter-bomber (Give 2 of 3 possible)?
 - (1) (Many years in Air Force service)
 - (2) (Good achievements in work)
 - (3) (Considered a very reliable person by the "organization")
9. What was Lao Jin expected to learn during his advanced training with the Air Force (Give 1 of 4 possible)?
 - (1) (Properties)
 - (2) (Structure)
 - (3) (The usage of instruments)
 - (4) (Guns)
10. What did the Chinese reconnaissance plane discover during the military exercise (3)?
 - (1) (Enemy planes)
 - (2) (Two destroyers)
 - (3) (One submarine)
11. What did the commander do after he got the information (be specific)?
(Sent Lao Jin to lead a team of fighter-bombers to fight against the enemy invasion)

12. How long did it take Lao Jin to take off?
(Less than 5 minutes)
13. What was the altitude of Lao Jin and his comrades' fighter-bombers before they attacked the enemy?
(10,000 meters)
14. Which side had more fighter planes, Lao Jin's or the enemy's?
(The enemy)
15. Why didn't the enemy know that Lao Jin's planes were flying above them?
(Their flying skills were inferior to those of Lao Jin)
16. What did Lao Jin and his comrades do before they were discovered by the enemy?
(Used air-to-air missiles to fire at the enemy planes)
17. How did Lao Jin and his comrades attack the enemy's warships and submarines (2)?
 - (1) (Firing rockets)
 - (2) (Depth charges)
18. How long did it take Lao Jin and his comrades to destroy the enemy's destroyer and submarines?
(More than 30 minutes)
19. According to the commander's comments, what tactic did Lao Jin use in attacking the enemy (be specific)?
(The best defense method is attack)
20. What were the second and third strong points of Lao Jin's tactics (2)?
 - (1) (Fast speed)
 - (2) (Good preparation)

21. Describe fully the two mistakes which Lao Jin made while attacking the enemy (2)?

(1) ([The planes] flew too closely together)

(2) (Firing too early)

22. a. What percentage of the hits did Lao Jin and his comrades score with rockets?

(About 80%)

b. What was the percentage of hits made with bullets?

(About 65%)

23. According to the commander, what should be raised?

(The level [effectiveness] of firing [with cannon])

24. Why does the Party need money?

(To accomplish the Four Modernizations)

25. According to the commander, how can a revolutionary military man help his nation save money (be specific)?

(To fire one bullet [at the enemy] as if there is [with] the effectiveness of ten)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 低空攻击的好处在哪儿？哪一种战斗机很适合进行低空攻击？为什么？

Dīkōng gōngjī de hǎochù zài nǎr? Nǎ yìzhǒng zhàndòuji hěn shìhé jìnxíng dīkōng gōngjī? Wèishénme?

2. 偷袭敌人的运输机以前，我们的战斗机应该先飞到他们的上边儿还是飞到他们的下边儿，为什么？

Tōuxí dírén de yùnsūjī yǐqián, wǒmen de zhàndòuji yīnggāi xiān fēidào tāmen de shàngbianr háishi fēidào tāmen de xiàbianr, wèishénme?

3. 请讲一讲美国的强击机跟轰炸机在速度、火炮跟带炸弹的数量上有什么分别？

Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng Měiguó de qiángjījī gēn hōngzhàjī zài sùdù, huǒpào gēn dài zhàdàn de shùliàngshang yǒu shénme fēnbié?

4. 一般地说，地面部队为了减少敌机轰炸的损失，都有哪些攻击敌机的武器？

Yībān de shuō, dìmiàn bùduì wèile jiǎnshǎo díjī hōngzhà de sǔnshī, dōu yǒu nǎxiē gōngjī díjī de wǔqì?

5. 听说人民解放军在1949年以前跟反动派打仗的时候，都是训练战士用步枪来射击反动派的飞机，为什么？请说一说。

Tīngshuō Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn zài Yījiǔsìjiǔnián yǐqián gēn fǎndòngpài dǎzhàng de shíhou, dōu shì xùnliàn zhànshì yòng bùqiāng lái shèjī fǎndòngpài de fēijī, wèishénme? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

6. 如果我们的部队跟敌军作战的时候天气不好，我们的战斗机看不清楚目标，他们会不会攻击自己的部队？为什么？

Rúguo wǒmende bùduì gēn díjūn zuòzhàn de shíhou tiānqi bùhǎo, wǒmende zhàndòujī kànbùqīngchū mùbiāo, tāmen huì búhuì gōngjī zìjǐde bùduì? Wèishénme?

7. 海军陆战队的战士有什么特别的任务？他们除了受普通入伍训练以外，还要受什么训练？请你讲一讲。

Hǎijūn lùzhànduì de zhànshì yǒu shénme tèbiéde rènwù? Tāmen chúle shòu pǔtōng rùwǔ xùnliàn yǐwài, hái yào shòu shénme xùnliàn? Qǐng nǐ jiǎng-yijiǎng.

8. 一般地说，战斗机对敌人进行低空扫射的时候，很少同时飞下去攻击，为什么？请说一说。

Yībānde shuō, zhàndòujī duì dí rén jìnxíng dīkōng sāoshè de shíhou, hěnnǎo tóngshí fēixiàqù gōngjī, wèishénme? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

9. 如果你是一个轰炸机的飞行员，你是先轰炸敌人的空军基地呢，还是飞机制造厂？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ shì yíge hōngzhàjī de fēixíngyuán, nǐ shì xiān hōngzhà dí rén de kōngjūn jīdì ne, háishi fēijī zhìzào chǎng? Wèishénme?

10. 为什么平时保养飞机的工作非常重要？请讲一讲。

Wèishénme píngshí bǎoyǎng fēijī de gōngzuò fēicháng zhòngyào? Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng.

11. 听说中国的空军战士在受作战训练的时候，干部叫他们只想到党和国家，不应该想家里的人，是不是真的？为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguóde kōngjūn zhànshì zài shòu zuòzhàn xùnliàn de shíhou, gānbù jiào tāmen zhǐ xiǎngdào dǎng hé guójiā, bù yīnggāi xiǎng jiālǐde rén, shì bushì zhēnde? Wèishénme?

12. 大部队撤退的时候，为什么要留一小部分的军队继续和敌军作战？在战术上有什么作用？
Dàbùduì chètùì de shíhou, wèishénme yào liú yìxiǎobùfen de jūnduì jìxù hé dǐjūn zuòzhàn? Zài zhànshùshàng yǒu shénme zuòyòng?
13. 战斗机在敌人的领海附近巡逻的时候，有没有办法不让敌人的雷达发现。为什么？
Zhàndòujī zài dírén de lǐnghǎi fùjìn xúnluó de shíhou, yǒu méiyǒu bànfǎ búràng dírén de léidá fāxiàn. Wèishénme?
14. 轰炸机去轰炸敌人阵地以前需要有战斗机保护吗？为什么？
Hōngzhàjī qù hōngzhà dírén zhèndì yǐqián xūyào yǒu zhàndòujī bǎohù ma? Wèishénme?
15. 听说中国每年有八、九百万的年轻人到达服兵役的年龄，可是只有百分之十的人可以入伍。那么，其余的人都到哪儿去了呢？请说一说。
Tīngshuō Zhōngguó měinián yǒu bā, jiǔbǎiwàn de niánqīngrén dàodá fú bīngyì de niánlíng, kěshì zhǐyǒu bǎifēnzhīshí de rén kěyǐ rùwǔ. Nàme, qíyúde rén dōu dào nǎr qùle ne? Qǐng shuōyīshuō.
16. 活塞式的战斗机能不能跟喷射式的战斗机作战？为什么？
Huósāishì de zhàndòujī néng bunéng gēn pēnshèshì de zhàndòujī zuòzhàn? Wèishénme?
17. 海军陆战队在进行登陆演习的时候一定得有战斗机配合作战吗？为什么？
Hǎijūn lùzhànduì zài jìnxíng dēnglù yǎnxí de shíhou yídìng děi yǒu zhàndòujī pèihé zuòzhàn ma? Wèishénme?
18. 在别国领海上飞行需要不需要得到那个国家的许可？为什么？请讲一讲。
Zài biéguó lǐnghǎishàng fēixíng xūyào bùxūyào dédào nàge guójiāde xǔkě? Wèishénme? Qǐng jiǎngyījiǎng.

19. 歼击机跟强击机都是战斗机，为什么歼击机的飞行速度快得多？请说一说。

Jiānjījī gēn qiángjījī dōu shì zhàndòujī, wèishénme jiānjījī de fēixíng sùdù kuàide duō? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

20. 听说中国空军飞行员的薪水比其他军种的战士高得多，这是不是谣言？为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó kōngjūn fēixíngyuán de xīnshuǐ bǐ qítā jūnzhǒng de zhànshì gāode duō, zhè shì búshì yáoyán? Wèishénme?

21. 如果敌军的防御工事非常坚固，普通地面部队的火炮不能把它们摧毁，应该怎么办？为什么？

Rúguǒ díjūnde fángyù gōngshì fēicháng jiāngù, pǔtōng dìmiàn bùduì de huǒpào bùnéng bǎ tāmen cuīhuǐ, yīnggāi zěnmē bàn? Wèishénme?

22. 美国的军人退伍以后，政府会负责他们念大学的教育费吗？还有什么其他的福利？请说一说。

Měiguode jūnrén tuìwǔ yǐhòu, zhèngfǔ huì fùzé tāmen niàn dàxué de jiàoyùfèi ma? Hái yǒu shénme qítāde fúlì? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

23. 如果你被派到空军去服兵役，你希望组织让你开直升机呢，还是歼击机？为什么？

Rúguǒ nǐ bèi pàidào kōngjūn qù fú bīngyì, nǐ xīwàng zǔzhī ràng nǐ kāi zhíshēngjī ne, hái shì jiānjījī? Wèishénme?

24. 低空扫射敌军的地面部队的时候，应该注意什么？

Dīkōng sāoshè díjūn de dìmiàn bùduì de shíhou, yīnggāi zhùyì shénme?

25. 请讲一讲为什么战斗机在低空攻击的时候很少使用炸弹来轰炸敌军？

Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng wèishénme zhàndòujī zài dīkōng gōngjī de shíhou hěنشǎo shǐyòng zhàndàn lái hōngzhà díjūn?

26. 请说一说美国的大型直升机在支援作战的时候有什么用？

Qǐng shuōyishuō Měiguóde dàxíng zhíshēngjī zài zhīyuán zuòzhàn de shíhòu yǒu shénme yòng?

27. 请说一说为什么新型的强击机上除了机关炮以外还有空对空导弹装备？

Qǐng shuōyishuō wèishénme xīnxíngde qiángjījīshàng chūle jīguānpào yǐwài hái yǒu kōngduìkōng dǎodàn zhuāngbèi?

28. 听说只有战斗机或是直升机可以在航空母舰上起飞降落。轰炸机不可以。为什么？

Tīngshuō zhǐyǒu zhàn dòujī huòshì zhíshēngjī kěyǐ zài hángkōngmǔjiàn shàng qǐfēi jiàngluò. Hōngzhàjī bùkěyǐ. Wèishénme?

29. 一般地说，美国的青年入伍以后，最少得服几年兵役？如果他想超期服现役，必须得到什么单位的许可？

Yībānde shuō, Měiguó de qīngnián rùwǔ yǐhòu, zuìshǎo dēi fú jǐnián bīngyì? Rúguǒ tā xiǎng chāoqī fú xiànyì, bìxū dédào shénme dānwèi de xǔkě?

30. 如果敌人的国家在一千多海里以外，我们派轰炸机去轰炸，办得到办不到？为什么？如果派战斗机去呢？

Rúguǒ dírén de guójiā zài yìqiān duō hǎilǐ yǐwài, wǒmen pài hōngzhàjī qù hōngzhà, bàndédao bànbudào? Wèishénme? Rúguǒ pài zhàn dòujī qù ne?

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. The low altitude strafing of the hostile aircraft was very effective. After 10 minutes, they had already destroyed all of our tanks and armored cars. There is no way we can continue our attack, we must immediately withdraw.

2. The enemy forces has over 100 fighter-bombers and 500 interceptors. I think we had better wait until our antiaircraft guns arrive, and only then can we begin the attack.

3. When night falls (arrives), the enemy fighter planes will be unable to do low altitude strafing. Moreover, they will not be able to see any of our movements. That is the best time to attack.

4. This fighter-bomber uses several different types of weapons. They not only have several bombs, but also have cannons and rockets. The type of weapon they use depends on under what conditions they do combat.

5. While fighting in Vietnam, our forces discovered that piston-type fighter-bombers were much more effective than jet-type fighter-bombers. This was because their speed was relatively slow, and they could see every target very clearly.

6. We've already fired three rockets at (toward) that enemy plane, but we still haven't hit it. I don't want to use the remaining rockets, so I had best request several interceptors to come and destroy it.

7. Of the fighter-bombers assigned to our unit, the majority are jet-type aircraft. Piston-type aircraft are only a small part of our unit.

8. Of the aircraft used by our unit, 10 percent are interceptors, 15 percent are fighter planes, 5 percent are observation aircraft, and 50 percent are fighter-bombers. The remaining 20 percent are all transport aircraft.

9. What are the distinguishing characteristics of a jet-type fighter-bomber? Generally speaking, its speed is slower than that of an interceptor, but faster than a piston-type aircraft. Also, it cannot carry as many bombs as a bomber can.

10. When our ground forces attack, they must be supported by our own fighter planes. Otherwise, when the enemy fighter-bombers come, we will have to stop the attack and withdraw.

11. Look! There is an enemy observation plane one kilometer to the east. We must be especially careful. If they see our troops, then the fighter-bombers will soon be here.

12. The armor of this type of tank is really strong. Even if it is hit by strafing fire, the personnel inside the tank will not be killed. This type can only be destroyed by rockets.

13. Do bombers use armor? Only a small portion of them do, and the armor they use is not as strong as the armor used by fighter-bombers.

14. Most of our modern fighter planes are jets; however, we still use some piston-type fighters for training and for guerrilla warfare.

15. When he was flying his jet fighter at low altitude, four enemy interceptors attacked him with their cannons and rockets, because that had no air-to-air missiles.

16. The enemy fortifications are too strong, the walls of their bunkers are more than three meters thick. I think that even a 500 kilo bomb won't be able to destroy it.

17. Many modern bombers can carry nuclear weapons. This implies that no matter how strong the fortifications of the enemy ground forces are, they will all be killed.

18. If the antiaircraft gun units cannot hit the enemy bombers, we must depend on our rocket units. Our antiaircraft guns will be able to hit them only if they attack at low altitude.

19. You could say that the People's Liberation Army was built from scratch. Originally, all of those entering the PLA were cadre or communist. Now they are only a small portion of those serving in the PLA.

20. The organization of the PLA is divided into three parts, the first part is the Army, the second is the Navy, and the third is the Air Force. The militia is the responsibility of the Army.

21. This table is really strong. When I put my television set on it, there was no problem. I think that I could put my bed on it, and there would still be no problem with strength; it's just that the table isn't that big.

22. The People's Liberation Army has made great contributions toward agricultural production in China. Every year, a small number (part) of our ground forces are assigned to numerous farming villages to help the farmers.

23. The enemy's ground forces are much larger than ours, and their fortifications are very strong. But because we have many fighter-bombers and many tanks, our ground forces can continue to attack.

24. This new weapon has many distinguishing characteristics. Its construction is very simple, and its range is very great. Moreover, it uses radar to aim, so it hits the target each time it fires.

25. When the airplane flew past, I could not see if it was our aircraft or an enemy aircraft. It flew so fast that I could not see it clearly, the only thing that I recognized was that it was a bomber. I was really scared, even to the point of running away.

26. Sometimes you can use bomber aircraft to lay mines. We often use this method of laying mines when our warships must enter the territorial waters of the enemy nation without any escort.

27. As soon as we approached/neared the enemy coastline, our warships were shelled by the howitzers of the enemy coastal defense unit. Two transport ships, one frigate, and four destroyers we hit by their bombardment. We must immediately request that repair ships be sent to help us.

28. Our retaliatory attack was very successful. On the one hand, we used cruisers to bombard the defense works of their coastal defense units, and on the other hand, the fighter-bombers from our aircraft carriers used nuclear weapons to destroy all of their coastal cities.

29. Our retaliatory attack was patterned after the attack we made last year. But the enemy remembered last year's attack very clearly. As soon as we attacked, we had to withdraw. Eighty percent of our soldiers were killed.

30. We must assign a tanker to support each cruiser. Their cruising range is not that far, and they must constantly be supplied. Otherwise, they will not be able to continue their patrols.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Zhàndòujī shāshāng díjūn de dìmiàn bùduì yǒu liǎngge bànfǎ. Yíge shì yòng jīqiāng sāoshè tāmen, lìngwài yíge shì yòng huǒjiàn. Yòng jīqiāng sāoshè de shíhou zuìhǎo shì dīkōng, yàoburán, bùnéng shāshāng xǔduō rén.

2. Zhēncháji shì yònglai zhēnchá dírén zhèndì huòshi fángyù gōngshì de, gēn jiānjīji bùtóng. Jiānjīji yídìng yǒu jīqiāng huòshi jīguānpào; kěshi wǒmende zhēncháji dàbùfen zhǐyǒu jīqiāng; yǒude lián jīqiāng yě méiyǒu.

3. Wǒmen Yījiǔqījiǔnián zhìzàode zhàndòu hōngzhàji yǒu hǎojǐge tèdiǎn. Wǒ zài zhèr bùnéng shuō yīnwei dōushi guófáng mìmì. Wǒ jiù kéyǐ gào su dàjiā yíjiàn shì, zhèzhǒng hōngzhàji fēide zuìkuàide shíhou měi xiǎoshí kéyǐ fēi sānqiānduō gōnglǐ, díji yào gǎnshàng tā, kě zhēn bànbudào.

4. Wǒmen gāng jiēdào yíge qǐngbào shuō dírén zài Qīnghé de kōngjūn dānwèi yígòng yǒu shíjià jiānjīji, sìjià qiángjīji, kěshi zhǐyǒu liǎngjià jiānjīji hé yíjià qiángjīji hái néng qǐfēi zuòzhàn. Qíyúde búshì huàile jiùshì quēfá língjiàn. Wǒ juédìng mǎshàng pài qíjià hōngzhàji yóu wǒjià zhàndòuji bǎohù qù Qīnghé hōngzhà díjūn zhèndì.

5. Zào pēnqìshì fēijiǐ bǐ zào huósāishì fēijiǐ yào guǐdeduō. Zǔguó mùqián háishi xiāngdāng qióngde guójiā, děi chùchù shēngqián, suóyì wǒmende yùnshūji hé zhēnchájiǐ dàbùfen háishi huósāishì de. Jiānglái, qíngkuàng hǎoyìdiǎnr yǐhòu, jiù dōu yòng pēnqìshìde le.

6. Díjūn yòng zhèzhǒng cáiliào gòuzhù gōngshì yěxǔ kéyì shēng bùshǎo qián, kěshi bìng bùjiāngù, bùnéng fāngyù wǒmende gōngjǐ. Wǒmen yòng chōngfēngqiāng jiù kéyì pòhuài suóyǒude gōngshì. Zhèyàngde gōngshì yǒu shénme yòng? Tāmende zhǐhuìyuán yòu yào shēng qián, yòu yào gōngshì jiāngù, zěnme bàndedào?

7. Zhào Tóngzhì! Nǐ wùhuì wǒde yìsi le, wǒ búshi shuō fēijiǐshang de jǐguānpào méiyǒu yòng, érshì shuō búshi yònglai zuòzhānde fēijiǐ, xiàng yùnshūji dēngdēng búbì yǒu jǐguānpào zhèzhǒng wǔqì. Yěxǔ zhǐyǒu shǎoshùde rén tóngyì wǒ shuōde huà, kěshi méiyǒu rén kéyì shuō wǒ búduì.

8. Cóng Yìjiǔsìwūnián dào Yìjiǔwúlíngnián zhǐjiān wǒmende jiānjǐjiǐ gēn jiéjǐjiǐ hái dōushi huósāishìde, fēide búkuài, méifázǐ gōngjǐ dírénde pēnqìshì hōngzhàjiǐ, suóyì dīmiàn bùduì bēi díjiǐ zhàiside yǒu hēnduō rén. Yìjiǔwǔyīnián yǐhòu, wǒmen yǒule pēnqìshì jiānjǐjiǐ, qíngkuàng jiù gǎibiānle.

9. Fǎndòngpài yóujǐduì gòuzhùde gōngshì xiāngdāng jiāngù, zhǐ yìkào zhàndòuji qū dīkōng sāoshè bùnéng pòhuài. Yǒude gānbù shuō zuìhǎo pài hōngzhàjiǐ yòng èrbǎigōngjīn yìkēde zhādān qū hōngzhà. Búguò zánmen kōngjūnde hōngzhàjiǐ tài shǎo, bàndedào bànbudào shéi yě bùnéng shuō.

10. Wǒmen dàjiā dōu nǚlì gāo sìge xiàndàihuà, xīwàng bǎ kējī gāoshàngqu. Kěshi huàifènzǐ zǒngshì yào zào yáoyán, gānrǎo pòhuài. Tāmen shuō zǔguó zàode fēijī jiàntǐng xìngnéng dōu bùhǎo, shènzhīyú shuō wǒmen zìjǐ zhìzào jiùshì làngfèi guójiāde qián. Nǐmen xiāngxiāng shuō zhèxiē huà de rén shì bushi huàifènzǐ.

11. Zǔguó jiěfàngle yǐhòu, bǎifēnzhījiùshìjiǔ de zhǐzhànyuán dōu yǒu gānjìn, yuànyì wèi guójiā nǚlì, yīfāngmian fùzé bǎowèi zǔguó, yīfāngmian cānjiā shēngchǎn. Búyuànyì zhème zuò de rén zhǐ zhàn shǎoshù. Tāmen búyào xuéxí xīnde dōngxì, bìngqiě rènwéi zǔzhǐ zuòde shì shénme dōu búduì. Zhèxiē rén shì fǎngémìngfènzǐ.

12. Yījiùsìjiùnián dào Yījiùwǔwǔnián zhījiān, wǒmen zhǐ huì zhìzào bùqiāng, shǒuqiāng, dēngdēngde qīngwǔqì, qíyúde wǔqì bù dé bú xiàng wàiguo mǎi, Yījiùwǔwǔnián yǐhòu cái mǎnmǎnrde nénggòu zìjǐ zhìzào. Wàiguo gōngyìngde wǔqì yìnián bǐ yìnián shǎo, Kěshi rúguǒ xiǎng zài Yījiùjiùlíngnián yìqián wánquán bùyìkào wàiguo gōngyìng, zhè kǒngpà hái bànbudào ne.

13. Wǒmen kōngjūn fēijī de zhōnglèi bùzhǐ jiānjījī, qiángjījī, zhè jǐzhōng. Wǒmen zhèngzài yánjiuzhe yìzhōng xīnde pēnqìshì fēijī, yǒu hǎojǐge tèdiǎn dōushi wàiguo fēijī mùqián hái méiyóude. Yǒu yíge dìguózhǔyì de guójiā shuō xīwàng gēn wǒmen hézuò, yìqǐ yánjiu, qíshí wǒ kàn tāmen shì yào dǎtǐng wǒmende jūnshì mìmì.

14. Jiàntǐng fēijī dōu fǎngzhào wàiguóde zhìzào, búshì bùhǎo, dànshi wǒmen zìjǐ háishi děi yánjiū fāzhǎn wǒmen zìjǐde dōngxī. Shǎoshùde tóngzhì shuō fǎngzhào wàiguóde, kéyǐ shěng hěnduō máfan. Tāmen méi xiǎngdao zhème zuò yǒu yíge máobìng, jiùshì wǒmen jiàntǐng fēijīde xìngnéng wàiguorén dōu zhīdao. Zhè shì hěn wēixiǎnde.
15. Cóngqián dírén yīwéi wǒmen méiyǒu gāoshèpào, suǒyǐ chángcháng dīkōng sǎoshè wǒmende dìmiàn bùduì, hòulái fāxiàn wǒmende zhànshì yǒu hǎojíci yòng zhòngjīqiāng, chōngfēngqiāng shèjì tāmende fēijī, cóng nàge shíhou qǐ jiù búzài yòng dīkōng sǎoshède fázi le.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate," because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 6

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Zhào Dáilǐ and Major Saunders of the U.S. Air Force Academy are discussing the Chinese Air Force.

1. S: Are all the airplanes in the Chinese Air Force made in China?

Z: 从一九六〇年到一九七〇年我们的飞机大部分都是仿照苏联制造的。现在我们的科技进步得很快，可以自己设计制造了。

Cóng Yījiūliùlíngnián dào Yījiūqīlíngnián wǒmende fēijī dàbùfen dōu shì fǎngzhào Sūlián zhìzào de. Xiànzài wǒmende kējì jìnbùde hěn kuài, kěyǐ zìjǐ shèjì zhìzào le.

2. S: How does the Chinese Air Force compare in size with air forces of other countries of the world?

Z: 在世界各国的空军之中，中国空军占第三名。我们的空军跟美国、苏联一样也有核武器。

Zài shìjiè gèguó de kōngjūn zhīzhōng, Zhōngguó Kōngjūn zhàn dìsānmíng. Wǒmende kōngjūn gēn Měiguó, Sūlián yíyàng yě yǒu héwǔqì.

3. S: How many aircraft do you have?

Z: 有四千一百架左右，不过，有很多都是一九五〇年到一九六〇年之间造的，已经太旧了。现在我们造了很多新式的飞机。

Yǒu sìqiānyībǎijià zuǒyòu, búguò, yǒu hěnduō dōu shì Yījiūwǔlíngnián dào Yījiūliùlíngnián zhījiān zào de, yǐjīng tài jiù le. Xiànzài wǒmen zào le hěnduō xīnshì de fēijī.

4. S: What types of jet aircraft do you have?

Z: 大多数是喷气式的，包括歼击机、强击机、截击机、侦察机、运输机，等等。活塞式的飞机很少，并且都是运输机。

Dàduōshù shì pēnqìshì de, bāokuò jiānjī, qiángjī, jiéjī, zhēnchájī, yùnshūjī, děngděng. Huósāishì de fēijī hěnshǎo, bìngqiě dōu shì yùnshūjī.

5. S: That is the same as the United States Air Force. Now, tell me, what is the difference between a fighter and a fighter-bomber?
- Z: 实际上没有什么分别。歼击机的任务是攻击敌机。强击机可以带两颗二百五十公斤的炸弹。投弹以后,也可以攻击敌机。
- Shíjìshàng méiyǒu shénme fēnbié. Jiānjījī de rènwù shì gōngjī díjī. Qiángjījī kéyǐ dài liǎngkē èrbǎiwǔshígōngjīn de zhàdàn. Tóudàn yǐhòu, yě kéyǐ gōngjī díjī.
6. S: What range do your transport planes have?
- Z: 大的运输机可以长途飞行,并且可以带四万一千五百四十公斤的人员和东西。小的运输机不能飞得很远,带的人员和东西也少多了,只有一千三百五十公斤。
- Dàde yùنشūjī kéyǐ chángtú fēixíng, bìngqiě kéyǐ dài sìwànyìqiānwùbǎisìshígōngjīn de rényuán hé dōngxī. Xiǎode yùنشūjī bùnéng fēide hěn yuǎn, dài de rényuán hé dōngxī yě shǎoduōle, zhǐyǒu yìqiānsānbǎiwǔshígōngjīn.
7. S: Do you use your interceptors to give support to the PLA ground forces?
- Z: 多数的截击机不能低空飞行。所以我们很需要能够低空飞行的飞机用机关炮和火箭炮扫射敌军。
- Duōshùde jiéjījī bùnéng dīkōng fēixíng. Suóyǐ wǒmen hěn xūyào nénggòu dīkōng fēixíng de fēijī yòng jīguānpào hé huǒjiànào sǎoshè díjūn.
8. S: Do you believe that your Air Force is prepared to defend your country from an enemy air attack?
- Z: 当然了,我们空军的一个主要任务就是摧毁侵略祖国的敌军。我们也要协同陆军消灭敌人的地面部队。
- Dāngránle, wǒmen kōngjūnde yíge zhǔyào rènwù jiùshì cuīhuǐ qīnlüè zǔguó de díjūn, wǒmen yě yào xiétóng lùjūn xiāomiè dírénde dìmiàn bùduì.
9. S: What else does your Air Force do in wartime?
- Z: 工作可不少。比方说吧,我们得负责轰炸敌人的机场和停在地面上的军用飞机。
- Gōngzuò kě bùshǎo. Bǐfāngshuō ba, wǒmen děi fùzé hōngzhà dírénde fēijīchǎng hé tíngzài dìmiànshàng de jūnyòng fēijī.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Three PRC Air Force officers have met to discuss air support for an upcoming assault on an enemy position.

Role 1: Major Lin is the commander of PRC combat air units. He has available 200 jet fighters, 150 fighter-bombers, 120 bombers, and 100 piston-type aircraft. He wishes to divide the assault by his forces into three parts: (1) send his jet fighters to attack and destroy the enemy anti-aircraft gun and radar positions at low altitude, using their rockets and cannon to strafe them; (2) use all of his fighter-bombers and bombers to destroy the fortifications and defensive positions of the enemy; and (3) use his fighters and fighter-bombers to strafe enemy troops. He wishes to use only jet-type aircraft in the attack because of the numerous enemy anti-aircraft gun positions.

Role 2: Major Sun is the commander of the PRC non-combat Air Force units. He has 30 reconnaissance airplanes and 200 transport planes available. He wishes to support the assault of friendly ground forces on the enemy position by using his reconnaissance aircraft to collect intelligence information on the enemy ground forces and using his transport planes to supply the ground forces with ammunition and equipment. However, he is convinced that none of his aircraft should take off until all enemy interceptors and fighters have been destroyed. Further, he wants Lin to assign 30 jet fighters to protect his aircraft from attack by enemy fighters beginning three days before the attack begins (especially for reconnaissance planes)

Role 3: Comrade Chen is the representative of the Central Committee. He feels that the most important objective is to collect intelligence information about the enemy anti-aircraft gun/radar positions and fortifications, as well as discovering the location of the enemy's tank units. He also feels that it is the mission of the reconnaissance aircraft to discover the locations of all of the enemy airfields in the area, as well as the types of aircraft assigned to those airfields. Therefore, he must convince Sun to use his reconnaissance aircraft to collect the required intelligence information, and Lin to assign fighters to protect the reconnaissance aircraft. After the intelligence has been collected, Lin should use half of his jet fighters and jet fighter-bombers to destroy the enemy aircraft and radar positions. The rest of the jet fighters should be used to cover the ground assault, while the fighter-bombers should be used to destroy enemy fortifications and important bridges. The piston-type fighter-bombers should be used to attack and destroy the enemy tank units and to support the ground forces in their attack.

Scenario 2

Situation: An enemy fleet of transports and warships has been discovered by reconnaissance aircraft to have moved into PRC territorial waters.

Role 1: Comrade Wang is the commander of the reconnaissance aircraft. Two days ago, the enemy warships were discovered, and include 1 aircraft carrier, 3 cruisers, 8 frigates, 12 destroyers, 15 transports, 4 oilers, and numerous patrol boats. One of the PRC reconnaissance planes was destroyed by a rocket fired from the enemy aircraft carrier. He wants to continue reconnaissance, but because of the dangerous situation, needs friendly fighters to escort the reconnaissance aircraft. He also feels that at least 20 additional jet reconnaissance aircraft should be assigned to his unit in order for him to continue his reconnaissance mission.

Role 2: Comrade Jiang is the commander of the PRC Air Force elements assigned to the local coastal defense units. He has available 60 fighter-bombers, of which 20 are piston-types and the remainder are jet-type aircraft. He also has 80 interceptors and 150 fighters, all of which are jet-types. He wishes to immediately send all of his fighter-bombers and fighters to attack the enemy warships, and the interceptors to cover the attack of the fighters and fighter-bombers. The enemy warships (especially the aircraft carrier) must be attacked immediately, as the sooner they are attacked, the more time the coastal defense units will have to prepare their defensive positions.

Role 3: Comrade Huang is the representative of the Central Committee. He feels strongly that the reconnaissance of the enemy warship must continue, and that Jiang must provide cover for the reconnaissance planes. The problem of enemy anti-aircraft guns and rockets could possibly be solved either by using jet-type reconnaissance aircraft, conducting reconnaissance at low altitude, or both. There will be no attacks on the enemy warships until they are within 15 nautical miles of the coastline; by that time, the Navy will have had enough time for their submarines to arrive at their attack positions, and a coordinated attack by both air and naval units would be very effective. During the attack, piston-type fighters and fighter-bombers will attack the oilers, repair and transport ships with rockets, bombs, and cannon, and the remainder of the aircraft will attack the enemy aircraft carrier. The other enemy ships will be attacked by the enemy aircraft carrier. The other enemy ships will be attacked by the submarines.

Scenario 3

Situation: An Air Force officer has met with a representative of the Central Committee and a representative of the Ministry of National Defense to discuss the modernization of the PRC Air Force.

Role 1: Comrade Tang is the representative of the Central Committee. He feels that all of the piston-type aircraft should be either sold or destroyed, or possibly used for the training of new pilots. All of the fighter aircraft, fighter-bombers, and transport aircraft should be jet-types, as the piston-types are all too slow. Moreover, all fighter-bombers should be able to use air-to-air missiles, bombs, and cannon as opposed to the currently used fighter-bombers which can use only air-to-air missiles and cannon or bombs and cannon. Interceptors and fighters should be armed only with air-to-air missiles, as cannon is less effective for high speed attacks. Bombers should be armed with cannon in order to be able to defend themselves against enemy interceptor aircraft.

Role 2: Comrade Zhao is the representative of the Ministry of National Defense. He feels that since the PLA ground forces are the backbone of national defense, the modernization of fighter-bomber aircraft should be their first objective. All fighter-bombers should be jet-type, and they should be able to use bombs, cannon, and rockets; but air-to-air missiles should be used only by fighters and interceptors. Bombers need not have cannon, as fighters will always be able to provide escort and cover for them. He agrees with Tang that the fighters and interceptors should rely on air-to-air missiles for destroying enemy aircraft.

Role 3: Comrade Sun is the representative of the PLA Air Force. He feels strongly that piston-type aircraft can still be used not only for training, but also as fighter-bombers. In order to effectively support the ground forces by attacking enemy tanks and/or fortifications, jet-type fighter-bombers are often too fast to be effective, and piston-types using rockets, bombs, and cannon to strafe enemy ground forces are very effective. Air-to-air missiles for fighter-bombers are useless, and they should be used only by fighters and interceptors. However, the fighters and interceptors cannot rely on only one type of weapon, and must also be armed with cannon. Reconnaissance aircraft must be able to collect intelligence at both high and low altitudes, and a new type of aircraft must be developed immediately in order for them to carry out this mission.

UNIT 7

DIALOGUE

1. A: 我知道侦察机负责用照相或是其他的方法进行侦察活动；运输机负责空运或是空投。可是不知道截击机是什么样子的飞机。

B: 截击机的性能跟歼击机差不多，可是雷达设备比较好，可以在任何情况下截击敌机。

2. A: 一般地说，一架歼击机或是轰炸机有多少机关枪和机关炮？

B: 有三枝到六枝机关枪或是机关炮。有的甚至于多到十二枝。所以，飞行员或是负责射击的人不能跟陆军战士一样用两只手操纵机关枪、机关炮，而是按电门操纵。

3. A: 还有别的武器和装备没有？

B: 所有的飞机都有无线电。有的歼击机和轰炸机有火箭炮和照相机。强击机和轰炸机得有瞄准器；否则，投弹的时候就不能摧毁目标了。

4. A: 你们空军的炸弹恐怕不止一种吧？

B: 有好几种，象爆发弹、穿甲弹、杀伤弹、燃烧弹、核子弹什么的。中子弹目前还没有。

5. A: 有人认为无线电是飞机上最重要的装备。你认为怎么样？

B: 很难说是不是最重要的装备。不过，空军的指战员都觉得飞机和塔台之间，飞机和飞机之间的联络一定要依靠无线电。没有无线电就不能执行任务了。

1. A: Wǒ zhīdao zhēnchájī fùzé yòng zhào xiàng huòshi qítāde fāngfǎ jìnxíng zhēnchá huódòng; yùnshūjī fùzé kōngyùn huòshi kōngtóu. Kěshi bùzhīdao jiéjījī shì shénme yàngzi de fēijī.

I know reconnaissance planes are responsible for carrying out reconnaissance activities by using photography or other methods; transports are responsible for airlifts or airdrops. But I don't know what kind of airplane an interceptor is.

B: Jiéjījī de xìngnéng gēn jiānjījī chābuduō. Kěshi léidá shèbèi bǐjiào hǎo, kéyì zài rènhe qíngkuàngxià jiéjī dǐjī.

The characteristics of an interceptor are about the same as those of a fighter. But it has better radar equipment and is able to intercept enemy aircraft under any circumstances.

2. A: Yìbānde shuō, yíjià jiānjījī huòshi hōngzhàjī yǒu duōshǎo jīguānqiāng hé jīguānpào?

Generally speaking, how many machine guns and cannons does a fighter or bomber have?

B: Yǒu sānzhī dào liùzhī jīguānqiāng huòshi jīguānpào. Yǒude shènzhìyú duōdào shìèrzhī. Suóyì, fēixíngyuán huòshi fùzé shèjī de rén bùnéng gēn lùjūn zhànshì yíyàng yòng liǎngzhī shǒu cāozòng jīguānqiāng, jīguānpào, èrshì àn diànmén cāozòng.

From three to six machine guns or cannons. Some planes may have as many as twelve. Therefore, the pilot or person in charge of firing the weapons can't operate them with two hands as an Army soldier does. Rather, he controls them by pushing buttons.

3. A: Hái yǒu biéde wǔqì hé zhuāngbèi méiyǒu?

Are there any other weapons and equipment?

B: Suóyǒude fēijī dōu yǒu wúxiàndiàn. Yǒude jiānjījī hé hōngzhàjī yǒu huǒjiànpào hé zhàoxiàngjī. Qiángjījī hé hōngzhàjī děi yǒu miáozhúnqì; fùzé, tóu dàn de shíhou, jiù bùnéng cuīhuǐ mùbiāo le.

All planes have a radio. Some fighters and bombers have rocket launchers and cameras. Fighter-bombers and bombers must have aiming devices; otherwise, they can't destroy the targets when they drop bombs.

4. A: Nǐmen kōngjūnde zhàdàn
kōngpà bùzhǐ yīzhǒng ba?

Your Air Force probably has more than just one kind of bomb, I suppose?

B: Yǒu hǎo jǐzhǒng, xiàng bàofā-
dàn, chuānjiǎdàn, shā-
shāngdàn, ránshāodàn,
hézǐdàn, shénmede. Zhōng-
zìdàn mùqián hái méiyǒu.

There are quite a few kinds, such as high explosive bombs, armor-piercing bombs, antipersonnel bombs, incendiary bombs, nuclear bombs, etc. We don't have any neutron bombs at present.

5. A: Yǒu rén rènwéi wúxiàndiàn
shì fēijīshàng zuì zhòngyào
de zhuāngbèi. Nǐ rènwéi
zěnmeyàng?

Some people say the radio is the most important piece of equipment on an airplane. What do you think of this?

B: Hěn nán shuō shì bùshì zuì
zhòngyào de zhuāngbèi.
Búguo, kōngjūnde zhǐzhàn-
yuán dōu juéde fēijī hé
tātái zhǐjiān, fēijī hé
fēijī zhǐjiān de liánluò
yídàng yào yīkào wúxiàndiàn.
Méiyǒu wúxiàndiàn jiù
bùnéng zhíxíng rènwù le.

It's very hard to say whether or not it's the most important piece of equipment. However, officers and men in the Air Force all feel that contact between an airplane and the control tower or between two planes has to rely on radio. You can't carry out your mission if you don't have a radio.

VOCABULARY

爆发弹	bàofādàn	high explosive bomb
操纵	cāozòng	to control, to operate
穿甲弹	chuānjiǎdàn	armor-piercing bomb
到	dào	as <u>adjective</u> as (as in <u>duōdào wǔge rén</u> "as many as five people;" <u>dǎdào 130 háomǐ</u> "as large as 130 mm")
电门	diànmén	switch
方法	fāngfǎ	method, way (of doing things)
飞行员	fēixíngyuán	pilot
核子弹	hézǐdàn	nuclear bomb
火箭炮	huǒjiànpiào	rocket launcher (Air Force)
截击	jiéjī	to intercept (lit., to intercept and attack) (mil.)
空投	kōngtóu	to air-drop
空运	kōngyùn	to airlift; airlift
联络	liánluò	to make contact; contact
瞄准器	miáozhǔnqì	aiming device
燃烧弹	ránshāodàn	incendiary bomb
任何	rènhe	any
杀份弹	shāshāngdàn	antipersonnel bomb
设备	shèbèi	equipment
手	shǒu	hand (C: zhǐ)
塔台	tǎtái	control tower
无线电	wúxiàndiàn	radio
执行	zhíxíng	to carry out (a mission, policy, etc.)
中子弹	zhōngzǐdàn	neutron bomb

STORY COMPREHENSION

老金和其他的同志在空军受完了各种新型战斗机的作战训练以后，就放假了。组织给他们一个月的时间回家去看看爱人和孩子。老金的爱人杨月华同志是他们老家人民公社妇女工作队的负责人，她也帮助组织办青年入伍的事，老金回家的那天人民公社的社员和群众都来欢迎他，并且由他的爱人杨同志安排跟那些快要入伍的青年见见面。那天下午两点钟他到了会议厅的时候，大家都站起来欢迎。这个时候，人民公社的负责人把老金介绍给他们认识，并且说今天不是开会，只是请金同志来跟大家随便谈谈，大家也可以随便问问题。这些青年都非常希望知道参军以后的生活跟解放军的情况，老金说，

Lǎo Jīn hé qítāde tóngzhì zài kōngjūn shòuwánle gèzhǒng xīnxíng zhàndòujī de zuòzhàn xùnliàn yǐhòu, jiù fàngjià le. Zǔzhī gěi tāmen yíge yuè de shíjiān huíjiā qù kànkan àiren hé háizi. Lǎo Gāo de àiren Yáng Yuèhuá tóngzhì shì tāmen lǎojiā rénmíngōngshè fùnǚ gōngzuòduì de fùzérén, tā yě bāngzhù zǔzhī bàn qīngnián rùwǔ de shì. Lǎo Jīn huíjiā de nàtiān, rénmín gōngshè de shèyuán hé qúnzhòng dōu lái huānyíng tā, bìngqiě yóu tāde àiren Yáng Tóngzhì ānpái gēn nàxiē kuàiyào rùwǔ de qīngnián jiànjian miàn. Nàtiān xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn zhōng tā dào le huìyìtīng de shíhou, dàjiā dōu zhànqǐlái huānyíng. Zhège shíhou, rénmín gōngshè de fùzérén bǎ Lǎo Jīn jièshào gěi tāmen rènshi, bìngqiě shuō jīntiān búshì kāihuì, zhǐshì qǐng Gāo Tóngzhì lái gēn dàjiā suíbiàn tántan, dàjiā yě kěyì suíbiàn wèn wèntí. Zhèxiē qīngnián dōu fēicháng xīwang

“在开始受训的时候就很忙，从早上六点起到晚上九点差不多没有休息的时间。这是因为需要学习的科目很多，所以要想在短短的三个月学完一定得抓科目，掌握时间。比方说，一个完全不懂步枪射击的人，干部要从各部件的构造，名称和保养的方法开始教，然后再教他怎么端枪、怎么扣扳机。等这些事情都懂了，也都做得很好了，那还不够，学员需要反复练习，最少得三个星期。一直到每个人都能掌握射击的动作了，才能开始实弹射击。等到实弹射击也掌握好了以后，还要进行作战演习。”说到这里，老金停了一下，拿起杯子来喝了一口茶，大家都很有兴趣地看着他。老金就继续讲下去。他说，“很多人觉得作战演习一定比一般的训练危险，这话是不错的。不过我的看

zhīdao cānjūn yǐhòu de shēnghuó gēn jiěfàngjūn de qíngkuàng, Lǎo Jīn shuō, "zài kāishǐ shòuxùn de shíhou jiù hěn máng, cóng zǎoshang liùdiǎn qǐ dào wǎnshang jiǔdiǎn chàbuduō méiyǒu xiūxi de shíjiān. Zhè shì yīnwei xūyào xuéxí de kē mù hěn duō, suǒyǐ yào xiǎng zài duǎnduǎnde sānge yuè xué wán yíding děi zhuā kē mù, zhǎngwò shíjiān. Bǐfang shuō, yíge wánquán bùdǒng bùqiāng shèjǐ de rén, gānbù yào cóng gè bùjiàn de gòuzào, míngchēng hé bǎoyǎng de fāngfǎ kāishǐ jiāo, ránhòu zài jiāo tā zěnmē duān qiāng, zěnmē kòu bānjī. Děng zhèxiē shìqing dōu dǒngle, yě dōu zuòde hěnhǎole, nà hái búgòu, xuéyuán xūyào fǎnfù liànxí, zuìshǎo děi sānge xīngqī. Yìzhí dào měige rén dōu néng zhǎngwò shèjǐ de dòngzuò le, cái néng kāishǐ shídàn shèjǐ. Děngdao shídàn shèjǐ yě zhǎngwò hǎole yǐhòu, hái yào jìnxíng zuòzhàn yǎnxí." Shuōdao zhèr, Lǎo Jīn tíngle yíxià, nàqǐ bēizi lai hēle yìkǒu chá, dàjiā dōu hěn yǒuxìngqude kànzhe tā. Lǎo Jīn jiù jìxù jiǎngxiaqu. Tā shuō,

法是实弹射击和作战演习是整个基本训练最重要的一部分，也是训练项目中最有意思的一部分。因为只有当在演习的时候你才能够了解实际上作战的情况。最重要的是经常演习操练如何使用武器，到了社会帝国主义侵略我们的时候才能有效地消灭敌人。”说到这里，有一个人站起来问老金，演习的时候如果有被火炮打死的同志，怎么办？如果他的家里又有母亲或是孩子怎么办？老金说，“这个不是问题，演习的时候被火炮打死的同志跟作战杀伤的同志一样受到党的照顾，党会负责他家里边人的生活，孩子的教育也全由国家管。”接着又有一个青年站起来问，他希望知道入伍训练完了以后可不可以挑选自己喜欢去的军种，老金说，“那就得由组织来看个人的情况才能作决定。比方

"hěnduō rén juéde zuòzhàn yǎnxí yídìng bǐ yìbānde xùnliàn wēixiǎn, zhè huà shì búcuòde. Búguò wǒde kǎnfǎ shì shídàn shèjī hé zuòzhàn yǎnxí shì zhèngge jībēn xùnliàn zuì zhòngyào de yìbùfen, yě shì xùnliàn xiàngmùzhōng zuì yǒuyìsi de yìbùfen. Yīnwei zhǐyǒu zài yǎnxí de shíhou, nǐ cái nénggou liǎojiē shíjìshàng zuòzhàn de qíngkuàng. Zuìzhòngyào de shì jīngcháng yǎnxí cāoliàn zěnmē shǐyòng wǔqì, dào le shèhuìdìguózhǔyì qīnlüè wǒmen de shíhou cái néng yǒuxiàode xiāomiè dírén." Shuōdao zhèli, yǒu yíge rén zhànqīlai wèn Lǎo Jīn, yǎnxí de shíhou rúguǒ yǒu bèi huǒpào dǎsǐ de tóngzhì, zěnmēbàn? Rúguo tāde jiāli yǒu yǒu mǔqīn huòshì hái zi zěnmēbàn? Lǎo Jīn shuō, "Zhège búshì wèntí, yǎnxí de shíhou bèi huǒpào dǎsǐ de tóngzhì gēn zuòzhàn shāshāng de tóngzhì yíyàng shòudào dǎngde zhàogu, dǎng huì fùzé tā jiālibianr rén de shēnghuó, hái zi de jiàoyù yě quán yǒu guójiā guǎn." Jiēzhe yòu yǒu yíge qīngnián zhànqīlai wèn, tā

说，有的人身体很好，知识水平也高，可是他父亲在解放以前给反动派做过事，还没有改造好，就不许到解放军去服兵役。当然，这只是一个特别的情况。一般地说，我们人民公社里的青年都是从贫下中农的家庭来的。只要你受训的时候努力学习，对工作很有积极性，组织多半都会分派你到喜欢去的军种的。”这时候又有很多个青年要问问题。老金让一个站在会议厅后边儿的人先问。那个青年说话的声音太小，前面的人都听不见，老金就叫他大声一点儿说。那个青年就大声地说，他常常到图书馆去看中国空军这一方面的杂志，对战斗机的性能有一点儿了解，可是还不懂为什么强击机比歼击机更适合攻击敌军和

xīwang zhīdao rùwǔ xùnliàn wánle
yǐhòu kěbùkěyǐ tiāoxuǎn zìjǐ xǐhuan
qùde jūnzhǒng, Lǎo Jīn shuō, "nà
jiù děi yóu zǔzhǐ lái kàn gèrén de
qíngkuàng cái néng zuò juéding.
Bǐfang shuō, yǒude rén shēntǐ hěn
hǎo, zhǐshì shuǐpíng yě gāo, kěshì
tā fùqīn zài jiěfàng yǐqián gěi
fǎndòngpài zuòguo shì, hái méiyǒu
gǎizào hǎo, jiù bùxǔ dào jiěfàngjūn
qù fú bīngyì. Dāngrán, zhè zhǐshì
yíge tèbiéde qíngkuàng. Yìbānde
shuō, wǒmen rénmín gōngshèlǐ de
qīngnián dōu shì cóng pínxiàzhōngnóng
de jiātíng lái de. Zhǐyào nǐ shòuxùn
de shíhou nǚlì xuéxí, duì gōngzuò
hěn yǒu jījīxìng, zǔzhǐ duōbàn dōu
huì fēnpài nǐ dào xǐhuan qùde jūn-
zhǒng de." Zhè shíhou yòu yǒu
hěnduōge qīngnián yào wèn wèntí.
Lǎo Jīn ràng yíge zhànzài huìyìtīng
hòubiānr de rén xiān wèn. Nàge qīng-
nián shuōhuà de shēngyīn tài xiǎo,
qiánmian de rén dōu tīng bujiàn,
Lǎo Jīn jiù jiào tā dàshēng yìdiǎnr
shuō. Nàge qīngnián jiù dàshēng de
shuō, tā chángcháng dào túshūguǎn

支援自己的部队。老金说，“这个问题很有意思，大家都知道强击机在设计的时候就是着重攻击用的。比方说，它可以在几十米高的低空向敌人的阵地或是部队攻击。因为它在低空飞行的性能特别好。无论是向上飞、向下飞，或是向左飞、向右飞也都要比歼击机好。并且强击机的无线电和雷达设备也是最新型的。作战的时候，配合瞄准器很容易把敌人目标摧毁。更重要的是强击机上边儿装备有各种口径的火炮，并且可以带炸弹去轰炸敌人的军事目标。这些性能都不是歼击机可以比的。所以说，强击机是配合陆军进攻敌人最有效的武器。”

qù kàn Zhōngguó kōngjūn zhè yīfāng-
mian de zázhi, duì zhàndòujī de
xìngnéng yǒu yìdiǎnr liǎojiě, kěshì
hái bùdǒng wèishénme qiángjījī bǐ
jiānjījī gèng shìhé gōngjī díjūn hé
zhīyuán zìjǐde bùduì. Lǎo Jīn shuō,
"zhège wèntí hěn yǒuyìsi, dàjiā dōu
zhīdao qiángjījī zài shèjì de shíhou
jiù shì zhuózhòng gōngjī yòngde.
Bīfāng shuō, tā kéyì zài jǐshími gāo
de dīkōng xiàng dírénde zhèndì huò-
shi bùduì gōngjī. Yīnwei tā zài
dīkōng fēixíng de xìngnéng tèbié hǎo.
Wúlùn shì xiàng shàng fēi, xiàng xià
fēi, huòshì xiàng zuǒ fēi, xiàng yòu
fēi, yě dōu yào bǐ jiānjījī hǎo.
Bìngqiě qiángjījī de wúxiàndiàn hé
léidá shèbèi yě shì zuì xīnxíngde.
Zuòzhàn de shíhou, pèihé miáozhǔnqì
hěn róngyì bǎ díren mùbiāo cuīhuǐ.
Gèng zhòngyàode shì qiángjījī shàng-
bianr zhuāngbèi yǒu gèzhǒng kǒujīng
de huǒpào, bìngqiě kéyì dài zhàdàn
qù hōngzhà dírénde jūnshì mùbiāo.
Zhèxiè xìngnéng dōu búshì jiānjījī
kéyì bǐde. Suóyì shuō, qiángjījī
shì pèihé lùnjūn jìngōng díren

老金说到这儿的时候已经差不多快四点钟了，公社的负责人站起来跟大家说，“时候不早了。在金同志回部队以前再请他来跟我们谈谈。各位有什么问题可以回去想好了，下次来讨论。”

zuì yǒuxiào de wǔqì."

Lǎo Jīn shuōdao zhèr de shíhou yǐjīng chàbuduō kuài sìdiǎn zhōng le, gōngshè de fùzérén zhànqilai gēn dàjiā shuō, "shíhou bùzǎole, zài gāo tóngzhì huí bùduì yǐqián zài qǐng tā lái gēn wǒmen tántan. Gèwèi yǒu shénme wèntí kéyǐ huíqu xiǎnghǎole, xiàcì lái tāolùn."

ENGLISH QUESTIONS
for
STORY COMPREHENSION

1. When did Lao Jin come home for vacation?
2. How long was the vacation given by the organization?
3.
 - a. Who was comrade Yang Yue-hua?
 - b. What was her position at the people's commune?
4. What work was she helping the organization with?
5. What did the commune members do on Lao Jin's return?
6. What did Lao Jin's wife arrange for him?

7. How did the people welcome Lao Jin when he arrived at the conference hall?
8. What did the leading cadre of the commune say when he introduced Lao Jin to the audience (be specific)?
9. What did the audience want to know from Lao Jin (2)?
10. According to Lao Jin, what were the working hours during basic military training?
11. Why must a recruit have a firm grasp of his time?
12. What does a cadre teach a recruit regarding his rifle (3)?
13. How long did it take a recruit to master the motions/firing positions?
14. After he has mastered the motions of firing a rifle and live (ammunition) firing, what should a recruit participate in?

WAE, Unit 7

15. What did Lao Jin say about live ammunition practice (2)?
16. Why did he say so?
17. What were the two questions asked by one of Lao Jin's audience (2)
(be specific)?
18. What were Lao Jin's answers to these two questions?
19. What was the question asked by another person from the audience?
20. What was Lao Jin's answer to the question raised by the second person
(be specific)?
21. Many people in the audience wanted to ask Lao Jin questions. Which
person was chosen by Lao Jin?
22. What was the question?

WAE, Unit 7

23. According to Lao Jin what was the fighter-bomber's specific performance (2)?

24. Why did Lao Jin say that a fighter plane could not compete with a fighter-bomber in performance during war time?

25. What time it was when the leading cadre announced that the meeting was about over?

STORY COMPREHENSION

Answers to Questions

1. When did Lao Jin come home for vacation?
(after [various newest fighter's] basic flight training)
2. How long was the vacation given by the organization?
(one month)
3. a. Who was comrade Yang Yue-hua?
b. What was her position at the people's commune?
(a. Lao Jin's wife)
(b. head of Women's Work Team)
4. What work was she helping the organization with?
(youth enlistment)
5. What did the commune members do on Lao Jin's return?
(gave him [a warm] welcome)
6. What did Lao Jin's wife arrange for him?
(an informal meeting)
7. How did the people welcome Lao Jin when he arrived at the conference hall?
(with a standing ovation)
8. What did the leading cadre of the commune say when he introduced Lao Jin to the audience (be specific)?
(this is not a meeting; we just invited comrade Jin to chat with you. You can also ask questions)

9. What did the audience want to know from Lao Jin (2)?
(1. life in the service, and 2. the condition/situation of Liberation Army)
10. According to Lao Jin, what were the working hours during basic military training?
(0600-2100 [hours])
11. Why must a recruit have a firm grasp of his time?
(to learn many different subjects within three months)
12. What does a cadre teach a recruit regarding his rifle (3)?
(1. the structure, 2. names, and 3. maintenance of a rifle's parts)
13. How long did it take a recruit to master the motions/firing positions?
(three weeks)
14. After he has mastered the motions of firing a rifle and live (ammunition) firing, what should a recruit participate in?
(combat maneuvers)
15. What did Lao Jin say about live ammunition practice (2)?
([live firing and combat maneuver are the] 1. most important sections/ parts of the basic training, and 2. they are the most interesting sections of all subjects)
16. Why did he say so?
(because one can understand the real situation though the live firing practice)
17. What were the two questions asked by one of Lao Jin's audience (2) (be specific)?
(how does the Party treat to 1. those who die in live practice, and 2. the mother or the child left at home)

18. What were Lao Jin's answers to these two questions?
(the Party will take care of comrades who are killed or wounded)
19. What was the question asked by another person from the audience?
(can one chose the branch of the Armed Forces after enlistment training?)
20. What was Lao Jin's answer to the question raised by the second person
(be specific)?
(that will be decided by the "organization" according to individual situation and ability)
21. Many people in the audience wanted to ask Lao Jin questions. Which person was chosen by Lao Jin?
(a person who stood at the rear of the hall)
22. What was the question?
(why the fighter-bomber is more fit/suited for attacking the enemy and supporting the friendly troops than the fighter?)
23. According to Lao Jin what was the fighter-bomber's specific performance (2)?
(1. special performance in attacking enemy at low altitude, 2. better performance than fighter in flying upward, downward, leftward and rightward turns [better maneuver ability], and 3. newest radio and radar equipments)
24. Why did Lao Jin say that a fighter plane could not compete with a fighter-bomber in performance during war time?
(1. aiming devices/equipment, 2. [various-sized] cannons/guns, and 3. can carry bombs [to bomb the enemy])
25. What time it was when the leading cadre announced that the meeting was about over?
(almost 4 o'clock)

CONVERSATIONAL RESPONSE

1. 听说中国最近派到外国去的留学生多半是学习科学和技术的。请说一说为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó zuìjìn pàidào wàiguó qùde liúxuésēng duōbàn shì xuéxí kēxué hé jìshù de. Qǐng shuōyishuō wèishénme?

2. 请说一说美国最新型的侦察机能够飞多么高，续航力有多么远？

Qǐng shuōyishuō Měiguó zuìxīnxíng de zhēnchájī nénggòu fēi duōme gāo, xùhánglì yǒu duōme yuǎn?

3. 飞机靠什么仪器跟地上的塔台联络？为什么跟塔台联络很重要？

Fēijī kào shénme yíqì gēn dìshàngde tǎtái liánluò? Wèishénme gēn tǎtái liánluò hěn zhòngyào?

4. 中子弹跟核子弹在杀伤和破坏上有什么不一样？

Zhōngzǐdàn gēn hézǐdàn zài shāshāng hé pòhuàishang yǒu shénme bù-yí-yàng?

5. 一般来说，截击机在执行作战任务的时候，机上只有一个飞行员，可是强击机上得有两个人。为什么？

Yìbānláishuō, jiéjījī zài zhíxíng zuòzhàn rènwù de shíhou, jīshàng zhǐyǒu yíge fēixíngyuán, kěshi qiángjījīshàng děi yǒu liǎngge rén. Wèishénme?

6. 听说新型战斗机上都有自动瞄准器，打仗的时候有什么好处？

Tīngshuō xīnxíng zhàndòujīshàng dōu yǒu zìdòng miáozhǔnqì, dǎzhàng de shíhou yǒu shénme hǎochù?

7. 听说先进国家的高射炮已经都改成雷达操纵的了。请讲一讲为什么？

Tīngshuō xiānjìn guójiā de gāoshèpào yǐjīng dōu gǎichéng léidá cāozòngde le. Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng wèishénme?

8. 听说中国也在积极地发展核子弹。对世界安全有好处还是坏处？为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó yě zài jījīde fāzhǎn hézǐdàn. Duì shìjiè ānquán yǒu hǎochù háishi yǒu huàichu? Wèishénme?

9. 一般地说，哪一种飞机适合执行空运跟空投的任务？为什么？

Yìbānde shuō, nǎ yīzhǒng fēijī shìhé zhíxíng kōngyùn gēn kōngtóu de rènwù? Wèishénme?

10. 中国要把国防搞上去，为什么特别着重发展火箭跟核子弹？请说一说。

Zhōngguó yào bǎ guófáng gǎoshàngqu, wèishénme tèbié zhuózhòng fāzhǎn huǒjiàn gēn hézǐdàn? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

11. 操作重坦克的战士有几个人？各人的任务是什么？

Cāozuò zhòngtǎnkè de zhànshì yǒu jǐge rén? Gèrén de rènwù shì shénme?

12. 据说在中国，任何人如果没有负责人发的证明都不可以参观核子弹制造厂/兵工厂。为什么？

Jùshuō zài Zhōngguó, rènherén rúguǒ méiyǒu fùzérén fāde zhèngmíng dōu bùkěyǐ cānguān hézǐdàn zhìzàochǎng/bīnggōngchǎng. Wèishénme?

13. 请讲一讲美国的反坦克炮跟穿甲弹轰击的目标有什么不同？

Qǐng jiǎngyijiǎng Měiguóde fǎntǎnkèpào gēn chuānjiǎdàn hōngjī de mùbiāo yǒu shénme bùtóng?

14. 飞机空投武器或是粮食的时候，应该注意什么？
Fēijī kōngtóu wǔqì huòshì liángshí de shíhòu, yīnggāi zhùyì shénme?
15. 有人说大国都有了核子武器以后就不会大规模地打仗了。为什么？
Yǒurénshuō dàguó dōu yǒule hézǐ wǔqì yǐhòu, jiù búhuì dàguīmóde dǎzhàngle. Wèishénme?
16. 强击机在低空攻击敌人工事的时候，发射什么炮弹最有效？为什么？
Qiángjījī zài dīkōng gōngjī dírén gōngshì de shíhòu, fāshè shénme pàodàn zuì yǒuxiào? Wèishénme?
17. 航空母舰上有什么主要的设备？目的是什么？请说一说。
Hángkōngmǔjiànshàng yǒu shénme zhǔyàode shèbèi? Mùdì shì shénme? Qǐng shuōyishuō.
18. 侦察机都没有武器吗？为什么？
Zhēnchájī dōu méiyǒu wǔqì? Wèishénme?
19. 如果一个国家秘密的送情报人员到敌国去，这些人应该受过什么训练？
Rúguǒ yíge guójiā mìmìde sòng qíngbào rényuán dào dígúo qù, zhèxiē rén yīnggāi shòuguó shénme xùnliàn?
20. 听说有的航空母舰可以带二百多架飞机，但是它的飞机场不大，怎么停得了/停那么多飞机呢？请讲一讲。
Tīngshuō yǒude hángkōngmǔjiàn kěyǐ dài èrbǎiduōjià fēijī, dànshì tāde fēijīchǎng búdà, zěnme tíngdéliǎo/tíng nàme duō fēijī ne? Qǐng jiǎng-yijiǎng.

21. 战斗机低飞扫射敌人军队以前，应该不应该先跟我们的作战部队联络一下？为什么？

Zhàndòuji dīfēi sāoshè dírén jūnduì yǐqián, yīnggāi bùyinggāi xiān gēn wǒmende zuòzhàn bùduì liánluò yíxià? Wèishénme?

22. 各种炸弹之中，哪一种的杀伤力量最大？

Gèzhǒng zhàdàn zhīzhōng, nǎ yīzhǒng de shāshāng lìliang zuì dà?

23. 使用燃烧弹的目的是什么？哪几种武器可以发射燃烧弹？

Shǐyòng ránshāodàn de mùdì shì shénme? Nǎ jǐzhǒng wǔqì kěyǐ fāshè ránshāodàn?

24. 侦察机除了可以秘密照相以外，还可以搜集什么情报，请说一说。

Zhēncháji chúle kěyǐ mìmì zhàoxiàng yǐwài, hái kěyǐ sōují shénme qíngbào, qǐng shuōyíshuō.

25. 听说中国驾驶战斗机的现役飞行员一定得非常年青，并且文化水平高，家庭成分好。那是为什么？

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó jiàshǐ zhàndòuji de xiànyì fēixíngyuán yíding dēi fēicháng niánqīng, bìngqiě wénhuà shuǐpíng gāo, jiātíng chéngfèn hǎo. Nà shì wèishénme?

26. 如果飞机上的无线电发生了故障，没有办法跟塔台联络了，飞行员应该怎么办？

Rúguǒ fēijīshàng de wúxiàndiàn fāshēngle gùzhàng, méiyǒu bànfǎ gēn tǎtái liánluò le, fēixíngyuán yīnggāi zěnmebàn?

27. 瞄准器有什么用？是不是所有的枪、炮都有瞄准器？为什么？

Miáozhǔnqì yǒu shénme yòng? Shì búshì suǒyǒude qiāng, pào dōu yǒu miáozhǔnqì? Wèishénme?

28. 一般来说，飞机场的塔台里最少得有几个工作人员负责才能够执行联络任务？

Yìbānláishuō, fēijīchǎng de tǎtáilǐ zuìshǎo dēi yǒu jǐge gōngzuò
rényuán fùzé cái nénggòu zhíxíng liánluò rènwù?

29. 听说新型强击机的机关炮射击手只要按电门就可以发射了。比用手操作的好吗？为什么？

Tīngshuō xīnxíng qiángjījī de jīguānpào shèjīshǒu zhǐyào àn diànmén
jiù kényi fāshè le. Bǐ yòng shǒu cāozuò de hǎo ma? Wèishénme?

30. 强击机在低空攻击的时候，发射燃烧弹跟穿甲弹的目的是什么？请说一说。

Qiángjījī zài dīkōng gōngjī de shíhòu, fāshè ránshāodàn gēn chuānjiǎdàn
de mùdì shì shénme? Qǐng shuōyishuō.

TRANSLATION

EXERCISE - A

Translate the following thirty English sentences into Chinese Mandarin using the Pinyin romanization system (including tones). In translating these sentences, you should attempt to use as many of the new vocabulary items as possible, as the intent of this exercise is to increase your ability to use those items.

1. When the enemy attacks our position, our fighter-bombers must certainly be armed with armor-piercing bombs. According to the most recent intelligence information, the enemy unit has many tanks, and when they attack, they will certainly use a lot of them.
2. During time of war, our bombers must use many different types of bombs (shells). This is because they must bomb quite a few different targets. The bombs (shells) that they commonly use include high explosive bombs, armor-piercing bombs, incendiary bombs, and anti-personnel bombs.
3. Our interceptor aircraft intercepted and destroyed the enemy bombers that were carrying the nuclear bombs. Otherwise, regardless of how good our defense positions were, we would all have been killed by the bombing.
4. Don't be so ill at ease. The enemy aircraft that are coming to bomb us are armed with rocket launchers and machine guns. Our pillboxes are all very strong. It is impossible for you to be injured.

5. All of the roads that come (lead) to our position have been destroyed by the enemy bombers. We must immediately use the radio to make contact with the Air Force and request our equipment, ammunition, etc., be airlifted to our position.

6. If the pilot of that fighter-bomber cannot find our position, we must use the radio to contact the control tower. They can then control his activities. If we use this method, then he will certainly find our position.

7. When carrying out low-altitude bombing, the pilots of our fighter-bombers must be very careful. Not only must they coordinate with the other fighter-bombers, but they must coordinate with the ground forces, too.

8. Quickly use the radio to contact the pilot of that bomber. He is flying too low! When he bombs the target, his plane will certainly be damaged by his own high explosive bombs.

9. We must request an airdrop for tomorrow. Almost all of our ammunition and hand grenades have been used up. If the equipment that we need does not arrive soon, we will all be killed by the enemy.

10. Our bomber's aiming devices have all been damaged. There is no way to carry out our mission using high explosive bombs. I think we must use a nuclear bomb or a neutron bomb to destroy the enemy defense positions.

11. He used (tried) the radio for a long time, but still could not make contact with the control tower. After half an hour, he saw that the receiver switch had not been turned on (opened).

12. I really don't know how to operate this weapon, its aiming device is too complicated, and I don't know how to load it. We should contact the artillery control tower and request they send an officer to help us.

13. As soon as the enemy ground forces attack our northern defense position, our bombers will use antipersonnel bombs and rocket launchers to wipe them out.

14. When bombing a city or factory, the most effective weapon is often an incendiary bomb. By using this method of bombing, we need not depend on our aiming devices to carry out the mission.

15. Some people say that, in the future, warfare will all be controlled by pushing buttons, but I don't believe this kind of talk. We will always need warships, ground forces, and airplanes.

16. Our radar aiming devices have really developed! They are very accurate, and you need not use other aiming devices. They are controlled by pushing just one button with your hand. By using this method, even if you cannot see the target, you can still carry out your mission.

17. Their outer defense positions are very strong. Perhaps we must use as many as 100 bombers to destroy them. I will depend on you to see that our bombers are all armed with high explosive and anti-personnel bombs.

18. With regard to the Navy and Air Force, it is very difficult to say what equipment is the most important. With regard to the Army, it is very easy, the soldiers' rifles and other weapons are the most important.

19. While flying the interceptor, the pilot turned on the radio switch but instead of hearing the control tower he heard some music.

20. Only America and the Soviet Union have neutron bombs, but we do not know if they will use that kind of bomb in wartime.

21. A large transport plane flew over our airfield, but our tower was not able to contact it using the radio; that pilot must have been asleep.

22. When our tanks were ambushed by the enemy guerrillas, we had to airdrop gasoline and shells; otherwise, the tanks would not be able to return.

23. The new reconnaissance aircraft do not have any weapons, but they are equipped with many cameras and several types of radar.

24. Most of our fighter-bombers are jet-types; however, a small portion of them are piston-type.

25. Piston-type fighter-bombers are the best type of plane for bombing and strafing at low altitudes because they can fly slow and stay over the target for a longer period of time.

26. The main duty of China's Air Force is to defend the fatherland against enemy air attack; not to attack other countries.

27. Our Navy has many airplanes, including interceptors, fighter-bombers, transports, etc., but we still do not have any aircraft carriers.

28. The distinguishing characteristic of a neutron bomb is the small explosion, the relatively small amount of houses destroyed, and the large number of people killed.

29. Piston-type fighter-bombers should be used to attack and destroy enemy tanks and to support the infantry assault.

30. The landing ship was destroyed by enemy artillery and our infantry cannot withdraw; they will have to rely on an airdrop for supplies.

EXERCISE - B

Translate the following passages into English.

1. Tǎtái shì fēicháng zhōngyàode yíge dìfang, méiyǒu xūkě, rènherén dōu bùkěyǐ jìnqù. Rúguǒ nǐ xiǎng cānguān, děi yǒu yíge fēixíngyuán péizhè nǐ qù. Cānguān de shíhòu bùnéng gēn tǎtáide rén tánhuà huòshì gānrǎo tāmen de gōngzuò.
2. Zǔguóde kōngjūn fāzhǎnle yìzhǒng yòng wúxiàndiàn cāozòng de jiānjījī, měixiǎoshí kěyǐ fēi qībǎiduō gōnglǐ. Zhèzhǒng fēijī suǐrán hái gǎnbu-shàng xiānjìn guójiā, kěshì yīnwèi shì wǒmen Zhōngguó rén zìjǐ zhìàode, suǒyǐ dàjiā dōu hěn gāoxìng.
3. Zhíxíng xúnluó rènwù de fēixíngyuán rúguǒ tīngjian tǎtái bàogào shuō fāxiàn díjī, yīnggāi yìfāngmian mǎshàng jiéjī, yìfāngmian yòng wúxiàndiàn gēn tǎtái liánhuò qǐngqiú kōngjūn zài pài jiānjījī huòshì jiéjījī lái zhīyuán.
4. Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ yǐjīng zhìzào le bùshǎode hézǐdàn gēn zhōngzǐdàn. Rúguǒ dí rén bù xiān yòng zhèxiē wǔqì wǒmen yídìng búyòng, kěshì rúguǒ dí rén yòng, nàme wǒmen yídìng yě yòng, bǎ tāmen chéngshì, gōngchǎng, dēngdēng wánquán cuīhuǐ, ràng tāmen zhīdao zánmen duōme lìhài.

5. Qiángjǐjǐ shàngmian yǒu hěnduō shèbèi. Yǒude shèbèi shì wǒmen mìmì de wǔqì, wàiguó hái búhuì zhìzào. Nǐmen péi wàiguó péngyou cānguān qiángjǐjǐ de shíhou, búyào gěi tāmen kàn nàxiē xīn shèbèi, yě búyào gěi tāmen jiǎng, gèng búyào ràng tāmen zhàoxiàng.

6. Gǎnbù zhǐ gēn wǒ shuōguo zhèzhǒng fēijǐ dài de zhādān yǒude shíhou kéyǐ duōdào liù, qīshíge. Tāmen kě méi gāosu wǒ dài de shì chuānjiǎdān hái shì ránshāodān. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng yíding méiyǒu hézǐdān.

7. Guǎngpíng lí wǒmen zhèli yǒu yìqiānduō gōnglǐ. Zhè liǎngge dìfang zhǐjiān méiyǒu huǒchē. Rúguǒ zǔzhǐ yào pài jūnduì dào nàr qù jìngōng dírén, wǒ kàn zhǐyǒu yòng kōngyùn de fāngfǎ. Kōngjūn shuō tāmen yíci kéyǐ yùnshū sānqiān rén.

8. Wǒmende kējì háishi luòhòu, suǒyǐ zhìzào de miáozhǔnqǐ háishi gǎnbushàng xiānjìn guójiā de shuǐpíng. Rúguǒ jǐngcháng xiàng wàiguó mǎi, nàme huāde qián jiù tài duōle. Miáozhǔnqǐ shì fēicháng zhōngyào de bùjiàn, wǒmen yíding yào bǎ zhèzhǒng shèbèi de zhìliàng gāoshàngqu.

9. Wǒmende jiānjǐjǐ dōu yǒu jìguānpào, yǒude yǒu sānzhi, yǒude yǒu liùzhi, zuǐduō de kéyǐ duōdào shíèrzhi. Jìguānpào de huǒlì bǐ jǐqiāng de huǒlì měng, róngyǐ cuīhuǐ díjǐ. Kěshì yǒude tóngzhǐ juéde jǐqiāng bǐ jìguānpào hǎo.

10. Kōngjūn zhànshì yòng jīqiāng shèjǐ bǐ lùjūn zhànshì róngyì. Kōngjūn zhànshì yòng yìzhī shǒu àn diànmén jiù xíngle, lùjūn zhànshì děi yòng liǎngzhī shǒu. Wǒ bùmíngbai wèishénme lùjūn bú yòng àn diànmén de fāngfǎ lái cāozòng jīqiāng. Nà búshì shěngle hěnduō máfan ma?!

11. Dāng fēixíngyuán de tiáojiàn hěn duō, shuǐpíng hěn gāo. Búshì měiyige qīngnián dōu kéyǐ hégé. Rúguǒ nǐde shēntǐ bùhǎo huòshì zuò shì bùxiǎoxīn, zǔzhǐ jiù bùhuì tiāoxuǎn nǐ qù xuéxí jiànshǐ fēijī. Xiànzài yíjià fēijī yào hǎojǐbǎiwàn rénmínbì, bùnéng suǐbiàn ràng yíge méiyǒu nénglì de fēixíngyuán qù cāozòng.

12. Zhāng Déshèng Tóngzhǐ yào suǒyǒude fēixíngyuán měitiān xiàwǔ liùdiǎn zhōng yìqián jiāo yíge bàogào, bǎ měiyíge zhōngtóu zuòde gōngzuò hé fāshēng de wèntí xiěxiàlai. Tāde yìsi hěn hǎo, yīnwèi fùzérén kéyǐ zhīdao měige fēixíngyuán měige zhōngtóu zuòle shénme shì, búguò, wǒ kǒngpà bùróngyì zhíxíng. Nǐ xiǎngxiǎng, dàjiā dōu mángdehěn, nǎr yǒu gōngfú xiě bàogào ne?!

13. Wǒ kǒngpà Sūn Jīnbǎo Tóngzhǐ shuōde huà yǒu liǎngge dìfang bútàiduì. Dìyī, kōngtóu búshì zài rènhe qīngkuàngxià dōu kéyǐ zhíxíngde. Rúguǒ fēng búdà jiù bùnéng kōngtóu; dìrén yòng gāopào shèjǐ wǒmen fēijī de shíhou, yě bùnéng kōngtóu, dìèr, kōngtóu de shíhou, bìngbùxūyào miào-zhūnqǐ.

14. Wōmen yǒu hěnduō yùnshū bùduì de fēijī, suǒyì kōngtóu méiyǒu wèntí, dànshì nǐmen děi xiān pài qiángjījī hōngzhà díjūn de dìmiàn bùduì, bìngqiě zài wōmen kōngtóu de shíhou děi pài zhàndòujī yǎnhù wōmen.
15. Yáo Hóngqīng shì shèhuìdìguózhūyì guójiā de jiàndié, bèi qīnlüèzhě cāozòng, gānrǎo pōhuài wōmen sìge xiàndàihuà de jīhua. Yíjiǔqīlíngnián wōmen kāishǐ yánjiū fāzhǎn zhōngzìdàn, tā bùxǔ wōmen jìnxíng, bìngqiě yào wōmen bǎ nàxiē shèbèi sònggěi shèhuìdìguózhūyì qīnlüèzhě.

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

For this activity you are to play the role of an interpreter for an American speaker and a Chinese speaker. When the American speaker finishes his line, render what he says into Chinese. Then, do the same for the Chinese speaker. We use the word "render" instead of "translate," because some of the lines could be quite idiomatic and you can't give a word-for-word translation.

UNIT 7

INTERPRETATION PRACTICE

Comrade Zheng Dali and Major Saunders continue their discussion of the PRCAF.

1. S: How do your aircraft carry out reconnaissance missions?

Z: 负责侦察任务的飞机平常飞行的高度在三百到一千米之间，速度是四百到五百节。侦察是一个很难的任务，并且也很危险。所以飞行员都是最有能力的。

Fùzé zhēnchá rènwù de fēijī píngcháng fēixíng de gāodù zài sānbǎi dào yìqiānmǐ zhījiān, sùdù shì sìbǎi dào wǔbǎijié. Zhēnchá shì yíge hěn nán de rènwù, bìngqiě yě hěn wēixiǎn. Suóyì fēixíngyuán dōu shì zuì yǒunénglì de.

2. S: Yes, reconnaissance missions are difficult. What methods of reconnaissance are your airplanes equipped to use (for)?

Z: 有的新飞机可以照相，有的不可以，因为没有那种设备。还有一件事我得告诉你，我们晚上侦察的时候，飞行的高度比较高，要不然就有危险。

Yǒude xīn fēijī kéyì zhàoxiàng, yǒude bùkěyì, yīnwèi méiyǒu nàzhǒng shèbèi. Hái yǒu yíjiàn shì wǒ děi gàosu nǐ, wǒmen wǎnshàng zhēnchá de shíhòu, fēixíng de gāodù bǐjiào gāo, yàoburán jiù yǒu wēixiǎn.

3. S: I understand. What type of bombs do your interceptors and bombers carry?

Z: 到目前为止，我们还没有中子弹，不过，象爆发弹、穿甲弹、杀伤弹、燃烧弹、核子弹等等的炸弹我们都有了。

Dào mùqián wéizhǐ, wǒmen hái méiyǒu zhōngzǐdàn. Búguò, xiàng bàofādàn, chuānjiǎdàn, shāshāngdàn ránshāodàn, hézǐdàn děngděngde zhàdàn wǒmen dōu yǒule.

4. S: I've heard that your Air Force is trying to improve its ability to support ground forces. Is that true?

Z: 是的。最近几年我们很着重那种训练。并且也正在改良侦察机的性能。

Shìde. Zuìjìn jǐnián wǒmen hěn zhuózhòng nàzhǒng xùnliàn. Bìngqiě yě zhèngzài gǎiliáng zhēncháji de xìngnéng.

5. S: If you have to use nuclear bombs in wartime, how would they be dropped?
z: 投核子弹的轰炸机不必是能飞长途的。投弹的高度不必太高也不必太低。
Tóu hézǐdàn de hōngzhàjī búbì shì néng fēi chángtú de. Tóudàn de gāodù búbì tài gāo yě búbì tài dī.
6. S: How low do your aircraft go (fly) on rocket attacks?
z: 一般来说, 高度差不多是一百五十米。目标大, 容易看见的时候这个高度最好。我们大多数的歼击机都配备了火箭炮。
Yìbānláishuō, gāodù chàbùduō shì yìbǎiwǔshímǐ. Mùbiāo dà, róngyì kànjian de shíhòu zhège gāodù zuì hǎo. Wǒmen dàduōshù de jiānjījī dōu pèibèile huǒjiànpào.
7. S: If you use more than one pair of aircraft to attack, do you come in from different directions?
z: 不从一个地方来有一个好处, 就是敌军又要注意东边儿西边儿、又要注意南边儿北边儿, 这样就容易扰乱他们了。
Bùcóng yíge dìfang lái yǒu yíge hǎochù, jiùshì díjūn yòu yào zhùyì dōngbianr xībianr, yòu yào zhùyì nánbianr běibianr, zhèyàng jiù róngyì rǎoluàn tāmen le.
8. S: Are there any other ways that your Air Force supports ground troops?
z: 有啊! 比方说, 战斗的时候, 我们可以把地面部队需要的装备空投给他们, 若是有受伤的指战员, 我们还负责把他们空运到医院去。
Yǒu a! Bǐfāngshuō, zhàndòu de shíhòu, wǒmen kéyǐ bǎ dìmiàn bùduì xūyào de zhuāngbèi kōngtóu gěi tāmen, ruòshì yǒu shòushāng de zhǐzhānyuán, wǒmen hái fùzé bǎ tāmen kōngyùn dào yīyuàn qù.
9. S: What is that building over there?
z: 那个是塔台, 那里有人负责跟我们的飞机联络。
Nàge shì tǎtái, nàlǐ yǒu rén fùzé gēn wǒmende fēijī liánluò.

10. S: Well, I thank you for giving me an introduction to the Chinese Air Force. This has really been an interesting experience.

Z: 不要客气。我很喜欢跟外国朋友谈谈我们中国空军的工作。

Búyào kèqi. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan gēn wàiguó péngyou tántan wǒmen Zhōngguó kōngjūn de gōngzuò.

ROLE PLAYING

Scenario 1

Situation: Three members of the PLA Air Force have met to discuss an air attack on an enemy fortified position.

Role 1: Major Song is the commander of the fighter-bomber units involved in the attack. He feels that the best method of attack would be for his aircraft to use high explosive and incendiary bombs to destroy the enemy fortifications, and antipersonnel bombs, cannon, and rockets against the enemy ground forces. Unfortunately, the structure of the fighter-bombers needs to be changed slightly in order to enable them to carry rocket launchers. He estimates that as many as 300 aircraft should be used to effectively destroy the enemy positions. The enemy antiaircraft gun positions have begun using new radar aiming devices, so that their fire has been very effective in destroying PRC aircraft.

Role 2: Colonel Zhou is the commander of all fighter aircraft involved in the attack. He feels that his aircraft should be used to intercept the enemy's transport aircraft that have been air-dropping supplies and equipment to the enemy troops. Of secondary importance is providing air cover for the attacking fighter-bombers by intercepting enemy fighters and fighter-bombers. As the enemy transports are piston-type airplanes, and the enemy fighters are jet-types, the friendly fighters should be equipped with both radar controlled and radio controlled air-to-air missiles as well as with cannon. He would also like to assign fighters to strafe the enemy antiaircraft gun positions, but does not have enough pilots to carry out all of the missions.

Role 3: Comrade Lin is the representative of the Central Committee. He feels that it is an absolute necessity that the fighter pilots and fighter-bomber pilots carry out radio contact to coordinate their attacks. They should also make contact with the control tower as soon as they begin and finish their attacks. He feels that the fighter-bombers must be used to destroy the antiaircraft gun positions, as their strafing attacks are much more effective than those of the fighters. The fighter-bombers should begin their attack on the enemy positions, and as soon as they discover an enemy antiaircraft gun position, should attack and destroy it. The parts needed to arm the fighter-bombers with rocket launchers will have to be airlifted from the Beijing area, but should arrive within 10 hours. Until then, the fighter-bombers will have to use their cannon and bombs in the attack.

Scenario 2

Situation: Three Air Force officers have met to discuss the modernization of the PRC Air Force.

Role 1: Major Ma is the representative of the commander of the PLA fighter/interceptor aircraft units. He feels that the objective of the modernization program should be to develop newer and more reliable firing switches, aiming devices, and air-to-air missiles. Only 60 percent of the firing switches on the current PLA fighter interceptors are reliable, and 10 percent do not work at all. Technicians have been trying to eliminate the switches with malfunctions, but have reported that newer ones of simpler construction are needed for both cannon and rocket launchers. Newer aiming devices are also needed, as the ones used at present are only accurate up to 300 meters. Further, all of the air-to-air missiles should be either radio or radar controlled.

Role 2: Colonel Chen is the representative of the commander of the PLA fighter-bomber aircraft units. He feels that the first objective of the modernization program should be to improve the current aircraft engines and the aircraft's ability to carry nuclear weapons. The current shortcoming in aircraft engines is that the aircraft are too slow, and the engines do not have enough power; therefore, the enemy has no difficulty in intercepting them before they can reach their assigned targets. Both the quality and power of the engines needs to be increased immediately. Further, current fighter-bombers can use only high explosive or incendiary bombs, as this type of weapon is relatively small and lightweight. They cannot carry the larger bombs, such as neutron or nuclear bombs.

Role 3: Major Mao is the representative of the commander of the PLA transport aircraft. His primary concern is that the aircraft have no way to defend themselves against enemy interceptors and fighters. Also, the radios currently used by the transport aircraft pilots cannot make direct contact with the covering fighter aircraft--they can only contact the control towers or other transport aircraft. The control towers must coordinate the missions of the fighters and transport aircraft. Finally, when air-dropping equipment or supplies to PRC ground forces, their speed is too slow, and it is easy for the enemy anti-aircraft guns to destroy the transport aircraft. Some way must be found to protect the transport aircraft.

Scenario 3

Situation: Two Air Force officers are discussing required pilot training with a member of the Ministry of National Defense.

Role 1: Colonel Lin is the representative of the commander of the PLA fighter units. He feels that all pilots should be trained in the areas of fighter interception and aiming devices used for air-to-air missiles and cannon. Of those pilots who are able to master these skills, 30 percent should then be trained in the best methods of dropping high explosive, anti-personnel, and incendiary bombs. Any pilots who are unable to master these basic areas (skills) should be trained to fly transport aircraft or to work in control towers. The best pilots should be assigned as fighter pilots.

Role 2: Colonel Jiang represents the commander of the PLA fighter-bomber units. He feels that emphasis should be placed on mastering bombing techniques and the correct methods of using new aiming devices. Their training should include the different techniques for using antipersonnel bombs, incendiary bombs, and high explosive bombs, as well as the best ways of using neutron and nuclear bombs. Also, their training should stress using rockets and cannon to strafe the enemy ground forces and attack enemy fortifications. As the fighter-bomber pilots must master more skills than the fighter pilots, the best pilots should be assigned to fighter-bomber units.

Role 3: Major Chen is the representative of the PLA transport units. He feels that before the pilots begin their specialized training, they should be divided into three groups. One third should be assigned to fighter units for fighter pilot training, one third should be assigned to fighter-bomber units for fighter-bomber pilot training, and one third should be assigned to transport units for training. He feels that carrying out the various missions assigned by the Central Committee are all of equal importance, and that no one can say that his mission is more important than anyone else's. He feels that transport pilots must also be very good, as they transport not only equipment and soldiers, but also nuclear and neutron bombs.

VOCABULARY

MODULE 2

B

		Unit
bàndédao/bànbudào	to be able/unable to do	6
bànzìdòng	semiautomatic	2
báo	to be thin	3
bàofādàn	high explosive bomb	7
bàofù	to retaliate; retaliation	4
bǐbushàng	can't compare with	1
bǐdeshàng	can compare with	1
bùbīng	infantry; infantryman	3
bùléi	to lay mines	5
búshì...érshì...	it's not... but rather...	1
bùzhǐ	not limited to, more than	5

C

cāozòng	to control, to operate	7
chājù	gap (in comparing quality or quantity of something)	1
chāoguò	to exceed	2
chètùì	to evacuate, to withdraw	5
chōngfēng	to charge (mil.), to assault (mil.)	2
chōngfēngqiāng	submachine gun (C:zhǐ)	2
chuānjiǎdàn	armor-piercing bomb	7
cóng...qǐ	from...on	1
cūihuǐ	to destroy, to smash	3

D

Dǎngzhōngyāng	The Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party	1
...dào	as (adjective) as; as in <u>duō dào wǔge rén</u> , "as many as five people;" <u>dà dào 130</u> <u>háomǐ</u> "as large as 130 mm."	7
dǎodàn kuàitǐng	fast attack craft missile	4
dēnglùjiàn	landing ship (C:sōu)	4
dēnglùtǐng	landing craft	4
diànmén	switch	7
diǎnshè	to operate at fixed fire; fixed fire; firing in bursts	2
díjī	enemy plane, hostile aircraft (HAC)	6
díjūn	enemy forces	6
dīkōng	low altitude	6
dìmiàn bùduì	ground forces	6
duān	to hold (with both hands) (in front of the person doing it)	2

F

fā	a round (counter for ammo, cartridge); a counter word for ammunition	2
fādòngjī	engine	1
fāngfǎ	method, way (of doing things)	7
fǎngzhào	patterned after	4
fǎnqián wǔqì	antisubmarine weapons	5
fēixíngyuán	pilot	7
fúji	to ambush; ambush	2
fùzá	to be complicated	2
fǔzhùjiàn	auxiliary ship	4

G

gānrǎo	to obstruct, to interfere, to disturb; obstruction, interference, disturbance	1
gǎnshàng	to catch up with	1
gǎo shàngqù	to improve	1
gōngchǐ	meter (unit of measurement)	2
gōngjī	to attack; attack	4
gòngxiàn	contribution (not in the sense of donation)	1
gòngyìng	to supply	5
guófáng	national defense	1
Guómíndǎng	Kuomintang (the Nationalist Party in China)	1

H

hǎiàn	seacoast	5
hǎilǐ	nautical miles	5
hángkōngmǔjiàn	aircraft carrier (C:sōu)	4
háomǐ	millimeter	3
hé wǔqì	nuclear weapon	4
héizǐdàn	nuclear bomb	7
hōngjī	to bombard, to shell	5
hòu	to be thick	3
huǒjiàn	rocket (C:zhǐ)	6
huǒjiàn fāshèqì	rocket launcher (Navy)	4
huǒjiàn pào	rocket launcher (Navy & Air Force)	7
huǒjiàn tǒng	rocket launcher (C:zhǐ) (tube); grenade launcher	3
huǒlì	firepower	2
huósāishì	piston type	6

WAE

hùsòng	to escort	5
hùwèijiàn	frigate (C:sōu)	4

J

-jī	a suffix added to an element, thus forming a type of aircraft (e.g.: zhēnchá + jī = zhēnchájī yùnshū + jī = yùnshūjī hōngzhà + jī = hōngzhàjī)	6
jià	counter for aircraft	6
jiāngù	to be strong (referring to inanimate objects)	6
jiānjījī	fighter plane	6
jiānóngpào	gun (C:mén)	3
jiàntǐng	warships and craft	4
jié	knots (nautical counter word for speed)	5
jiéjī	to intercept (lit., to intercept and attack) (mil.)	7
jiéjījī	interceptor (plane)	6
jīguānpào	cannon, gun (about 30 mm, mounted on warplanes)	6
jùlí	distance	2
jūnjiàn	warship (C:sōu)	4

K

kǎbīnqiāng	carbine (C:zhī)	2
kējì	science and technology (abbreviation of <u>kēxué</u> "science" and <u>jìshù</u> "technique, technology")	1
kōng duì kōng dǎodàn	air-to-air missile	1
kōngtóu	to airdrop	7
kōngyùn	to airlift; airlift	7
kǒujīng	caliber (mil.)	3

L

liánluò	to make contact; contact	7
liánxùfāshè/ liánxùshèjī	continuous fire (mil.); to fire continuously (mil.)	2
lièqiánjiàn	submarine chaser (C:sōu)	4
lǐnghǎi	territorial waters	5
liúdànpào	howitzer (C:mén)	3
luòhòu	to fall/lag behind, to be backward	1
luòshí	to implement, to carry out	1

M

měng	to be strong, to be fierce	2
miáozhǔnqì	aiming device	7

N

nà yào kàn	that depends...; it depends....	2
------------	---------------------------------	---

P

pǎijīpào	mortar (C:mén)	3
páishuǐdūnwèi	displacement tonnage	4
pàobīng	artillery; artilleryman (a branch of Army)	3
pēnqìshì	jet type	6
pòhuài	to destroy; destruction	1

Q

qiāng	gun (other than an artillery piece)	2
qiáng	to be strong	3
qiángjījī	fighter-bomber (C:jià)	6
qiánshuǐtǐng	submarine (C:sōu)	4
qíqiāng	carbine (M:zhī)	2
qíshí	actually, as a matter of fact	5

qíyúde	the rest, the remaining	6
quēdiǎn	drawback, defect, shortcoming, weak point	2
qūzhújiàn	destroyer (C:sōu)	4
<u>R</u>		
ránshāodàn	incendiary bomb	7
rènhe	any	7
<u>S</u>		
sǎoléi	to sweep mines (naval)	5
sǎoléijiàn	minesweeper (C:sōu)	5
sǎoshè	to strafe, to sweep (with a gun) (mil.)	6
shǎoshù	minority, a small number	6
shāshāngdàn	antipersonnel bomb	7
shèbèi	equipment	7
shèchéng	range (mil.) (the distance a gun will shoot)	3
shèhuì-dìguózhǔyì	social-imperialism	1
shèhuìzhǔyì	socialism	1
shēngnà	sonar	5
shēnshuǐzhādàn	depth charge (C:kē)	4
shènzhīyú	even (to the point of...)	6
shíxiàn	to realize, to accomplish, to bring about	1
shǒu	hand (C:zhǐ)	7
...shǒu	a suffix attached to the name of a gun (e.g.: buqiang + shou = buqiangshou, jiqiang + shou = jiqiangshou, pao + shou = paoshou, etc.) to indicate the operator	2
shuǐléi	mines (naval) (C:kē)	5
sùdù	speed	2

T

tǎnkè dēnglùjiàn	LST (landing ship, tank)	5
tǎtái	control tower	7
tèdiǎn	distinguishing, characteristic	6

W

wúxiàndiàn	radio	7
------------	-------	---

X

xiàndàihuà	modernization; to modernize	1
xiàngzhàn	to engage in street fighting (mil.); street fighting (mil.)	2
-xíng	-type	3
xìngnéng	properties and performance (of anything mechanical)	1
xiūlǐjiàn	repair ship (C:sōu)	5
xùhánglì	endurance (cruising range) (naval)	5
xúnluótǐng	patrol boat	4
xúnyángjiàn	(naval) cruiser (ship) (C:sōu)	4

Y

yǎnhù	to cover (mil.); cover (mil.)	2
yāzhì	to suppress	2
yīkào	to rely on	5
yǐshàng	above, over	3
yǐwài	beyond, outside, other than, except	2
yóuchuán	tanker, oiler (ship) (C:sōu)	4
yōudiǎn	strong point, merit	2
yǒushēnglìliàng	effective strength (mil.)	3
yúléi	torpedo (C:kē)	4
yùnbǐngchē	personnel carrier (C:liàng) (mil.)	3

WAE

yùnsū	to transport; transportation	3
yùnsūjiàn	transport (ship) (C:sōu)	4
<u>Z</u>		
zào	to build	4
zǎojiù	long ago	1
zhàdàn	bomb	6
zhàndòu-hōngzhàjī	fighter-bomber (C:jià)	6
zhàndòuji	fighter plane	1
zhíshēngjī	helicopter (C:jià)	2
zhíxíng	to carry out (a mission, policy, etc.)	7
zhīyuán	to support (mil.)	5
zhīzhōng	amongst	4
zhǒnglèi	kinds, variety	5
zhòngliàng	weight	3
zhōngxíng	medium type	3
zhōngzǐdàn	neutron bomb	7
zhuāngjiǎ	armor; to be armored	3
zìxínghuǒpào	self-propelled gun (C:mén)	3
zuòchū gòngxiàn	to make a contribution	1



